

Министерство науки и высшего образования Российской Федерации
Федеральное государственное бюджетное образовательное учреждение
высшего образования
«Владимирский государственный университет
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых»

ИЗУЧАЕМ АНГЛИЙСКУЮ ГРАММАТИКУ

WE LEARN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Учебное пособие по английскому языку
для студентов-бакалавров первого курса
неязыковых специальностей



Владимир 2019

УДК 811.111
ББК 81.2 Англ
ИЗ2

Авторы-составители: Г. А. Блинова, И. А. Федорова

Рецензенты:

Кандидат педагогических наук
доцент кафедры профессиональной языковой подготовки
Владимирского юридического института
Федеральной службы исполнения наказаний
С. П. Фокина

Кандидат педагогических наук
доцент кафедры второго иностранного языка и методики обучения
иностранному языку Владимирского государственного университета
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых
О. М. Константинова

Изучаем английскую грамматику = We learn english grammar :
ИЗ2 учеб. пособие по англ. яз. для студентов-бакалавров первого курса
неязыковых специальностей / авт.-сост.: Г. А. Блинова, И. А. Федорова ;
Владим. гос. ун-т им. А. Г. и Н. Г. Столетовых. – Владимир : Изд-во
ВлГУ, 2019. – 212 с. – ISBN 978-5-9984-0966-0.

Цель пособия – формирование грамматических навыков и умений у студентов
неязыковых специальностей первого года обучения. Содержит теоретический материал,
а также многочисленные упражнения, задания и тесты как для аудиторной, так и для
самостоятельной работы студентов в соответствии с требованиями программы обучения
иностранному языку на неязыковых специальностях.

Предназначено для студентов-бакалавров первого курса, обучающихся по
неязыковым направлениям специальностей 44.03.01 – Педагогическое образование и
44.03.05 – Педагогическое образование (с двумя профилями подготовки).

Рекомендовано для формирования профессиональных компетенций в соответствии
с ФГОС ВО.

Библиогр.: 22 назв.

УДК 811.111
ББК 81.2 Англ

ISBN 978-5-9984-0966-0

© ВлГУ, 2019
© Блинова Г. А., Федорова И. А., 2019

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Учебное пособие рассчитано как на аудиторную, так и на самостоятельную работу студентов и соответствует программе обучения иностранному языку в неязыковых вузах.

Цель пособия – активное овладение грамматическими структурами английского языка на коммуникативной основе. Грамматический материал охватывает все основные явления морфологии английского языка, необходимые для активного овладения речью. В основу пособия положен принцип «от теоретического объяснения к практическим упражнениям», за которыми следуют задания для самоконтроля и тесты. Вся система упражнений построена с учетом постепенного нарастания языковых трудностей.

Материал пособия поделен на части (Units) и охватывает следующие разделы грамматики английского языка: артикль, имя существительное, местоимение, имя прилагательное, наречие, глагол, временные формы глагола, предлоги. Каждая глава разделена на четыре части: 1. Теоретические сведения, 2. Упражнения для работы в аудитории, 3. Упражнения для домашней работы 4. Дополнительные задания. Каждая часть содержит вопросы для самоконтроля и тесты.

Виды упражнений разнообразные, это и подстановка, перифраз, создание логических цепочек, множественный выбор, перевод с родного языка на иностранный и наоборот, тестовые задания. Часть упражнений рекомендуется выполнять устно, что наиболее рационально при выделенном количестве часов на изучение иностранного языка.

Авторы стремились сделать задания информативными, содержательными, интересными для обучающихся, а также не слишком сложными по своему лексическому составу во избежание дополнительных трудностей.

UNIT 1. АРТИКЛЬ (THE ARTICLE)

Артикль – это структурная часть речи, которая определяет существительное в английском языке. Употребление артикля зависит от типа существительного, а также контекста или ситуации, в которой он употребляется.

В английском языке 2 артикля: неопределенный артикль „a“ и определенный артикль “the”. Неопределенный артикль имеет 2 формы „a“ и „an“. „A“ употребляется перед существительными, которые начинаются с согласной буквы или буквы “u”.

E.g. a book, a table, a unit.

„An“ употребляется перед существительными, которые начинаются с гласной буквы или буквы “h”, которая не читается.

E.g. an arm, an author, an hour.

Неопределенный артикль употребляется:

☺ перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе, когда оно употребляется впервые.

E.g. I see a man. A house has a roof. He has an English book.

☺ перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе, когда оно представляет определенный класс предметов или существ;

E.g. A dog is a domestic animal.

☺ перед существительными обозначающими профессию;

E.g. He is a driver.

☺ перед именами существительными, обозначающими время, меру, вес, скорость, частотность.

E.g. **A week** or two passed.

I'll be **back in a minute**.

It is 80 roubles **a kilo**.

The car makes 120 km **an hour**.

I go to the library **twice a week**.

☺ перед именем существительным, которое употребляется в общем смысле и имеет значение «каждый» (“every”);

E.g. A child can understand that.

☺ со следующими словами и словосочетаниями: a couple, a dozen, a score (20), a hundred, a thousand, a penny, a million, a lot of, a great many of;

☺ перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе после слов слов “such”, “quite”, “rather”.

E.g. She is such a clever woman.

He is quite a young man.

☺ в восклицательных предложениях перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе, стоящих после слова “what” в значении «что за», «какой»;

E.g. What a clever man!

What a fine day!

But: What X beautiful pictures!

☺ в следующих грамматических конструкциях:

It is a... This is a... There is a... She has a... I see a...

E.g. I see a bird in the cage.

She has a lot of books.

This is a small cat.

There is an old woman in the armchair.

☺ с названиями некоторых болезней: a cold, a headache, a sore throat.

E.g. He feels bad. He may have caught a cold.

☺ неопределенный артикль не употребляется перед неисчисляемыми существительными. Вместо него употребляется “some”, “many”, “little” etc.

E.g. Water is necessary for life.

Give me some water, please!

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex.1. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite article where necessary.

1. ... iron is... metal.

2. ... bread is made of flour... .

3. ... milk comes from... cow.

4. We eat soup with ... spoon.
5. ... butter and cheese are made of ... milk.
6. Which fruit would you like ... apples or ... oranges?
7. This is ... dictionary.
8. I wear... rain-coat in... autumn and ... fur coat in winter.
9. ... square has four sides.
10. She is ... librarian.

Ex.2. Fill in the blanks with the definite article where necessary.

1. What ... interesting book!
2. She is such ... nice woman.
3. It is quite ... difficult problem.
4. What ... strange man!
5. What ... funny thing to say!
6. What ... fine building!
7. She is rather ... stupid girl!
8. What ... misfortune!
9. What ... horrible songs!
10. What ... pity!

Ex.3. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite article and “some” where necessary.

1. Please, give me ... hot milk.
2. Put ... lemon in my tea.
3. ... fly is ... insect.
4. There is ... skating-rink in our yard.
5. Please, put ... sugar in your tea.
6. If you have ... toothache, you should go to the dentist.
7. It happened in ... small town in Siberia ten years ago.
8. Our garden is enclosed by ... fence with ... gate.
9. There is ... juice in the bottle.
10. Pour ... milk into the cup, please.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite article where necessary.

1. It's ... cat. Its ... tail is long and bushy.
2. That is ... boy. That ... boy is her ... brother.
3. My granny has ... headache.
4. She has no ... idea what to do.
5. There is ... car near our house.
6. What ... expensive ring!
7. I see ... dog in the garden.
8. They are quite... kind people.
9. This is ... soup.
10. He won't go to school. He has ... sore throat.

Ex.5. Fill in the blanks with the indefinite article where necessary.

1. Give me ... coffee. I have ... headache.
2. ... children like ... ice cream.
3. England has to import ... raw materials such as ... wood, ... timber, ... petroleum, ... cotton and others.
4. My brother had ... accident the other day and hurt his leg.
5. Put ... salt into your salad.
6. When English people refer to ... raincoat, they usually mean ... coat made of ... waterproof material.
7. ... trees are yellow, but ... trees in the forest are green.
8. What ... rainy weather!
9. They have ... domestic animals on their farm ... cows, sheep, horses and ... swine.
10. Our country is rich in ... oil and ... coal.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. Не приходи ко мне. Я болею. У меня болит горло.
2. Яблоки стоят 59 рублей за килограмм.
3. Я принимаю эти таблетки 2 раза неделю.
4. Я готовлю 1 раз в день.
5. Какая прекрасная погода! Давай пойдём в парк.

6. Он довольно странный человек. С ним трудно иметь дело.
7. У меня есть пара близких друзей. Мы вместе учимся в институте.
8. Я вижу полку и 3 картины на стене.
9. Моя мама – домашняя хозяйка. Она очень хорошо готовит.
10. Корова и овца – домашние животные.
11. Он такой непослушный ребенок!
12. Я иду спать. У меня болит голова.
13. Овощи полезны для здоровья.
14. Надень пальто. Ты можешь простудиться.
15. Рыба плавает в воде.

Употребление определенного артикля:

☺ Определенный артикль “the” имеет две формы чтения:
 the [ðə] перед существительными, начинающимися с согласной буквы: the book:

the [ði] перед существительными, начинающимися с гласной буквы: the apple.

Определенный артикль употребляется как с исчисляемыми, так и с неисчисляемыми существительными.

☺ когда мы даем определенную информацию в ответах на вопросы “what”, “which”, “whose”, т.е. когда говорящий и слушающий знают о каком предмете или явлении идет речь;

E.g. – Pass me the bread, please.

– What bread? – The bread which is on that blue plate.

☺ перед именами существительными, которые упоминаются во второй раз;

E.g. When I entered the room I saw a man standing at the window. The man was rather old.

☺ когда говорящий использует определения, указывающие на определенный объект;

E.g. This is **the** house that **Jack built**.

☺ когда ситуация или контекст делают предмет определенным;

E.g. The wedding looked sad. The bride was too young and the bridegroom was too old.

☺ перед существительным в единственном числе, если оно представляет целый класс предметов.

E.g. The radio was invented by Popov.

☺ перед именами существительными, единственными в своем роде: the Sun, the Moon, the Earth, the Universe, the Galaxy, the Kremlin, the North Pole, the Sky, the stars.

E.g. The Sun was getting warmer.

But: Когда мы имеем в виду определенное состояние солнца, луны, неба и т.д. перед этими существительными употребляется неопределенный артикль.

E.g. A blue sky was very clear.

☺ перед именами существительными, которые определяются прилагательными в превосходной степени;

E.g. The highest mountains are in Asia.

☺ перед именами существительными, которые определяются местоимениями “some”, “all” и прилагательными “wrong”, “right”, “very”, “next”, “previous”, “following”, “last”, “only”, “whole”;

E.g. You are the very person I need.

We'll have more time the following week.

But: next week, next month.

☺ перед порядковыми числительными

E.g. He was the first to come to the lesson.

☺ перед существительными, производными от прилагательных: the old, the rich, the blind, the poor;

E.g. There are special schools for the blind and the deaf.

☺ перед именами существительными, которые имеют значение «один», «единственный»: the President, the manager, the director, the captain, the capital.

E.g. Paris is the capital of France.

Call the manager, please.

☺ перед следующими существительными: the country, the mountains, the weekend, the seaside, the cinema, the theatre, the radio, the

police, the firebrigade, the army, the bank, the post office, the doctor, the dentist.

But: television.

☺ перед собирательными существительными, обозначающими политические или социальные понятия.

E.g. the Communist Party, the working class

☺ перед названиями музыкальных инструментов;

E.g. Can she play the piano?

☺ перед названиями организаций и учреждений, перед названиями кораблей, отелей и хорошо известных поездов;

E.g. the United Nations Organisation, the Royal Academy, the Metropol, the May Flower.

☺ перед названиями англоязычных газет;

E.g. The Morning Star, The Times

But: Pravda

☺ перед названиями исторических эпох или событий:

E.g. the Renaissance, the French Revolution

☺ перед названиями исторических памятников, театров, кинотеатров, отелей, школ, колледжей и университетов

E.g.: the Winter Palace, the Tower of London, the Bolshoy theatre, the Globe, the Hermitage, the British Museum, the Royal Cage, the Hilton, the University of London.

But: London University.

Определенный артикль не употребляется:

☺ перед названиями, обозначающими время обычного приема пищи: breakfast, dinner, lunch, tea, supper.

E.g.: What time do you have dinner?

But: когда имеется в виду определенный прием пищи, то употребляется “the”;

E.g.: The dinner she gave was very delicious.

☺ когда перед названием приема пищи стоит прилагательное, то перед ним употребляется неопределенный артикль;

E.g.: She cooked a very good breakfast.

☺ перед словами “next”, “last”, когда они употребляются со словами “week”, “month”, “season”, “year” and etc.

E.g.: We’ll discuss the problem next time.

I went to Siberia last year.

☺ в выражениях “to be at school”, “to go to school”, “to be at college”, “to leave college”;

But: когда имеется в виду школьное здание употребляется “the”;

E.g.: When did you go to the school?

☺ в выражениях “to be in prison”, “to be sent to prison”, “to be put to prison”;

But: когда имеется в виду здание тюрьмы употребляется “the”;

E.g.: to be in the prison;

☺ в выражениях “to go to bed”, “to stay in bed”;

E.g. He is sick. He should stay in bed.

☺ в выражениях “to go to work”, “to be at work”, “to start work”, “to go to church”, “to go to hospital”, “to arrive home”, “to be in hospital”, “to be at home”, “to arrive home”, “to come home”;

E.g.: It’s late. Let’s go home.

☺ перед словом “town”, когда оно противоположно по смыслу слову “country”.

E.g. He doesn’t like to stay in town in summer.

Употребление артикля с географическими названиями

Определенный артикль употребляется:

☺ перед названиями групп островов и горных цепей;

E.g. the British Isles, the Bermudas [bəmju: dəz]

But: Sicily [`sisəli] Madagascar [mædə`gæskə]

But: the Isle of Man, the Cape of Good Hope

E.g.: the Urals, the Caucasus

But: Mont Blanc

☺ перед названиями рек, озер, морей, океанов, заливов и каналов, пустынь;

E.g.: the Pacific Ocean, the Black Sea, the Volga, the Sahara, the English Channel, the Baikal, the Ontario

But: Lake Baikal, Lake Ontario;

☺ перед названиями регионов;

E.g.: the Middle East, the Far East, the North of England

But: North America, Western Canada, Central Asia;

☺ перед названиями сторон света;

E.g.: the North, the South, the East, the West.

But: from North to South

☺ перед названиями стран, в которые входит слово “united”.

E.g.: the United States of America, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland.

Note (Примечание):

1) Следующие названия стран употребляются с определенным артиклем: the Congo, the Sudan, the Netherlands, the Ukraine.

☺ следующие названия регионов употребляются с определенным артиклем: the Ukraine, the Caucasus.

Без артикля употребляются:

☺ названия континентов, стран, городов, улиц, площадей;

E.g.: Africa, Asia, France, London, Petrovka

But: the village of Petrovka

☺ следующие названия исторических памятников и церквей: Westminster Abbey, St.Paul’s Cathedral, Buckingham Palace; Winter Palace

☺ названия компаний, сетей магазинов, станций и аэропортов, парков и космических кораблей;

E.g. General Motors, Hyde Park, Marx and Spencer, Apollo

☺ названия графств, штатов;

E.g. Kent, Texas [teksəs]

☺ названия следующих организаций: NATO, Parliament, Congress.

Употребление артикля с именами собственными

Определенный артикль употребляется:

☺ перед именами собственными, обозначающими целую семью (всегда во множественном числе);

E.g.: I’ll tell you about the Greens family.

The Wilsons are my neighbours.

☺ перед именем нарицательным, обозначающим профессию, за которым следует имя собственное;

E.g.: The painter Hogarth left a lot of fine pictures.

☺ в следующих выражениях:

E.g. Lomonosov was the son of a fisherman.

Becky was the daughter of a painter.

Неопределенный артикль употребляется:

☺ перед именем собственным, обозначающим одного члена семьи

E.g. I have wondered if Tim was really a Brown.

☺ когда имена людей становятся исчисляемыми существительными, обозначающими типичные черты хорошо известных людей;

E.g. You are quite a Monte Cristo.

She felt like an Alice in Wonderland.

☺ перед именами людей, которые определяются словом “certain”

E.g. I heard it from a certain Mr.Pickwick.

Артикль не употребляется:

☺ перед именем собственным

E.g. There was a letter from Susan on the table.

☺ перед именами собственными, определяющимися следующими прилагательными: old, young, little, poor, dear, honest etc.;

E.g. She was a widow of poor Jack.

☺ перед существительными, обозначающими родственные отношения, после которых следует имя собственное;

E.g. Uncle John wasn't very tolerant.

Aunt Polly was a nice merry woman.

☺ перед существительными, обозначающими ранги, титулы, профессию за которыми следует имя собственное;

E.g. Professor Brown; Lord Byron; Doctor Wilson.

Употребление артикля в некоторых сочетаниях и выражениях

Следующие выражения употребляются с неопределенным артиклем:

a lot of, a great deal of, a good deal of, a great number of, a great many, a good many (много);
a few - несколько, a little - немного,
a first child - первенец, an only child - единственный ребенок,
at speed of - со скоростью,
at a time, at a time when - в то время когда, for a short (long) time - за короткий (долгий) срок,
in a loud voice - громким голосом,
all of a sudden - внезапно,
to be in a hurry - спешить,
to be in a position - быть в состоянии,
to be at a loss - быть в затруднении,
it is a pity - жаль,
as a result of - в результате,
as a matter of fact - фактически,
to have a look - взглянуть,
to have a headache - испытывать головную боль,
to take a seat - сесть на место,
to go for a walk - пойти гулять,
to have a cold - простудиться,
a first love (night, time) - первая любовь,
to tell a lie - лгать.

Следующие выражения употребляются с определенным артиклем:

in the morning, in the evening, in the afternoon, in the night,
What is the time?
the day before yesterday,
on the right - справа,
in the country,
on the one (other) hand - с одной стороны,
on the whole - в целом,
the other day - на днях,
to go to the cinema (theatre, pictures),
to play the piano (the violin),
to tell the time,

to tell the truth - сказать правду,
in the original - в оригинале.

Следующие сочетания употребляются без артикля:

at night, by day,
at home, at work,
at sunset,
at first time,
at peace, at war,
by tram, by bus, by air, by water, by sea, by land,
by post,
by heart,
by chance,
by mistake,
by name,
by means of,
at dinner,
at table,
in time,
in debt,
in sight,
in fact,
in conclusion,
on board ship, on deck,
on credit,
on sale,
day after day, day and night,
from time to time, from head to foot;
to work side by side – работать бок о бок,
to read line by line – читать строчку за строчкой
to stand shoulder to shoulder – стоять плечом к плечу,
hand in hand – рука об руку,
from start to finish,
from top to bottom – сверху донизу,

horse and rider – лошадь и наездник,
mother and child – мать и дитя.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Fill in the blanks with the articles “a”, “an”, “the” where necessary. Explain the usage of the articles.

1. ... girl ran across... street.
2. ... walls of my house are painted green.
3. ... children love ice cream.
4. I have lost ... key to my room.
5. There is ... garden behind... house.
6. I got ... interesting book from our library. ... librarian said that I could keep it only for... week.
7. Put your bag in ... back of ... car.
8. Has ... postman come yet?
9. Can you tell me ... way to... theatre?
10. I can't find... letter which you gave me this morning.
11. Pass me ... sugar please.
12. We shall ship ... next week.
13. ... cases unloaded from ... ship “Pskov” have been placed in ... warehouse.
14. ... garden which is at ... back of that house has... lot of... apple-trees.
15. ...Trees are yellow and red in autumn.
16. What ... weather! ... rain hasn't stopped all... day.
17. ... windows let in ... light and ... air.
18. What ... interesting film!
19. Put ... wood in ... fire.
20. Give me ... cold milk.

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with the articles and explain their usage.

1. ... Elbrus is the highest peak of... Caucasian Mountains.
2. ... Earth is millions of kilometers from the Sun.
3. He lived in ... South some years ago.

4. ... England imports... wool from ... Australia.
5. ... Volga-Baltic Waterway passes through ... Neva River, ... Lake Ladoga, ... Svir River with two hydroprojects, Lake Onega and ...Volga-Baltic Canal.
6. ... Fleet Street is named after a river called ... Fleet.
7. Washington is ... capital of ...USA.
8. Where is ... Mediterranean Sea?
9. ... Russia is washed by ... Arctic Ocean in ... north.
10. ... Caucasus separates ... Black Sea from ... the Caspian Sea.
11. ... Pacific Ocean is very deep.
12. ... France is to... north of ... Italy.
13. There are seven continents on ... Earth.
14. ... Red Sea is between ... Africa and ... Asia.
- 15.... Irish Sea is between ... Great Britain and ... Ireland.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 3. Use the articles where necessary.

1. ... London is... capital of ... Great Britain, ... full name of which is ... United Kingdom.
2. They used to spend their summer holidays on ... Black Sea coast in ... Crimea.
3. ... Red Square and ... Kremlin are ... heart of ... capital.
4. ... St. Petersburg was founded on ... banks of ... Neva by Peter ... Great.
5. Canada is situated in... northern part of... North America.
6. He arrived in... New York on ...very rainy day.
7. She spent several hours at ... Bronx Zoo ... Monday.
8. ... Dr. Rebecca Smith is our dentist.
9. ... Ryan gave ... Sunday Tribune to his father.
10. ... room 25 is on ... 3rd floor.
11. ... lecture begins at ... 9 o'clock in ... morning.
12. Can you bake ... bread?
13. What's ... news?
14. ... English like to drink ... tea with ... milk.
15. ... February is ... shortest month of ... year.

Ex. 4. Use the articles where necessary.

1. Open ... textbook on... page 20 and look at ... picture at ... top of ... page.
2. He read the story from ... beginning to... end.
3. ... 5 o'clock tea is ... tradition in... England.
4. ... man can't live without ... air.
5. What... beautiful weather we are having today!
6. ... hour passed, ... second hour passed.
7. He decided to spend... few pounds he had on books.
8. Can I see ... picture, ... he gave you... minute ago.
9. I want to tell ... truth.
10. You married her not for ... love but for ... money.
11. ... fish is more useful than ... meat.
12. ... new year begins on ... 1st of... January.
13. ... water in ... river is quite warm this summer.
14. What ... fine day!
15. ... article is at ... bottom of ... front page.

Ex. 5. Use the articles where necessary.

1. ... party was ... success.
2. She learned to play... piano at ... age of four.
3. ... water in ... Baltic Sea is cold most of ... time.
4. ... parents worked from... morning till ... night, but family could hardly make both ... ends meet.
5. Has ... number of ... telephone changed?
6. There is ... tourist camp on ... other bank of river.
7. Look! What ... lovely present I've received!
8. You could buy... Picasso for £300 in those days.
9. There was ... smell of ... spring in ... air.
10. I'm reading ... Agatha Christie at ... moment.
11. Don't drink ... milk, it is very cold.
12. There is ... little juice in the bottle. You can drink it.
13. Do you find cartoons in ... Times?
14. I have two tickets for ... new show at ... Everyman theatre.
15. Which is ... way... to ... Star Hotel?

Ex.6. Use the articles where necessary.

1. He was sent to... prison for debt.
2. I go rather often to... cinema, but very seldom to... theatre.
3. Are you still in ... bed?
4. I like to spend weekends out of... town.
5. ... Browns have left ... London.
6. I'll ask ... Horwards to take our dog while we are away.
7. He was... first to come ... to ... party.
8. ... Bolshoy Theatre is ...oldest in ... Moscow.
9. I'm looking for... pair of...black gloves.
10. Yesterday I read ... book by Dickens, ... famous English writer.
11. ... Russia occupies ... eastern half of ... Europe.
12. ... Shetland Islands are situated to ... north of ... Great Britain.
13. My sister bought ... blue hat on ... Friday. ... colour suits her very nicely, as she has got blue eyes.
14. My aunt is ... teacher of Physics.
15. Nekrasov, ... famous Russian poet, described ... life of ... Russian peasants.

Ex.7. Use the articles where necessary.

... room was... 4th floor. It was ... room 205 ... porter gave Sue ... key and said ... lift didn't work because it was after ... midnight. ... heavy suitcase was killing her when she was climbing last flight of stairs. Sue stepped into ... dark corridor, ... room was at ... end of ... corridor and when she opened ... door and found herself in ... small hall, she felt ... happiest woman in ... world. She put on ... light. It was ... very small room with ... tiny table by... window, ... chair, ... mirror on ...wall. There was ... bed against ... wall and ... picture over it. Sue sat on ... bed and started thinking about ... plans for ... next day. Suddenly she heard ... knock at ... door.

Ex. 8. Use the articles where necessary.

Do you know that

1. ... London stands on ...Thames.
2. ... population of ... Britain is 57 million.
3. ... Romans came to Britain in ... first century BC.
4. ... Labour Party is in ... power in ...UK.

5. ... Queen Elizabeth ... Second became ... British monarch on ... 6th of February, 1952.
6. ... Queen Mother was one of... most popular members of ... Royal family.
7. ... English is not ... only language spoken in ... Great Britain.
8. ... Caledonia, ... Cambria, Hibernia were ... Roman names for ... Scotland, Wales and Ireland respectively.
9. ... national flag of ... UK is ... Union Jack.
10. English eat ... dinner at ... 6 or 7 o'clock in ... evening.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 9. Use the articles where necessary.

- 1) I bought ... new hat yesterday. ... shop-assistant said it was ... latest style.
- 2) Is this ... interesting book? Is this ... very interesting book? Is this ... interesting book you have spoken about so much? It is such ... interesting book. Is this ... same book you have recommended to us?
- 3) There is ... word in ... text I can't understand. There is also ... very difficult word I can't pronounce. Here is ... word I was looking up in the dictionary. This word is ... adverb.
- 4) ... Russia is such ... large country that when it is night in one part of ... country, it is day in another part.
- 5) ... Ireland, ... Scotland and ... Wales are parts of ... United Kingdom.
- 6) Yesterday I was at ... cinema. – What ... film did you see? – Oh, I saw ... very good film. I think it's ... best film of ... year.
- 7) There are six continents in ... world.
- 8) ... Red Sea is between ... Africa and ... Asia.
- 9) ... climate of ... northern part of ... Russia is severe. It's warm in ... Crimea and Caucasus.
- 10) ... Washington is ... capital of ... United States.
- 11) Look at ... clock! It's ... high time to go to ... bed! You work from ... morning till ... night.
- 12) There is ... butter on ... plate.

Ex. 10. Translate into English.

1. Железо – металл.
2. Хлеб сделан из муки.
3. Мы едим суп ложкой.
4. Рыба плавает в воде.
5. Я ношу плащ осенью, а шубу зимой.
6. Овощи полезны для здоровья.
7. У него есть кошка, но нет собаки.
8. Какой странный человек!
9. Какие чудесные цветы!
10. Это довольно длинный рассказ.
11. Я иду спать. У меня болит голова.
12. Надень пальто. Ты можешь простудиться.
13. Зимний дворец находится в Санкт-Петербурге.
14. Солнце согревает нашу землю.
15. На столе чайник. В чайнике чай. Чай горячий.
16. Он единственный ребенок в семье.
17. Волга впадает в Каспийское море.
18. Какие самые высокие горы в России?
19. Озеро Байкал– самое глубокое в мире.
20. Нил течет через северо-восточную часть Африки в Средиземное море.
21. Они любят гулять в Гайд-парке.
22. Альпы покрыты снегом.
23. Приходите ко мне завтра. – Об этом не может быть и речи. Я очень занята.
24. Мой друг ходит в театр 2 раза в месяц.
25. Мы уже можем читать Диккенса в оригинале.
26. В целом я довольна вашей работой.
27. Туристы разбили лагерь у подножия горы.
28. Мой брат пьет кофе вечером, а я утром.
29. По правде говоря, я так и не поняла почему она ушла.
30. – Который час?
– Без четверти 7.
– Пора ужинать.

31. С одной стороны, они любят друг друга, а с другой стороны, они не могут пожениться. Им негде жить.
32. По правде говоря, я не люблю тюльпаны, я люблю розы.
33. Если у вас болит зуб, вам следует пойти к зубному врачу.
34. Мы покупаем таблетки и микстуру в аптеке.
35. Об этом не может быть и речи, чтобы ехать в Анапу автобусом.
36. Поедем туда поездом.
37. У нее голубые глаза и светлые волосы.
38. Я люблю бананы и ананасы.
39. Ее муж – писатель.
40. Кофе слишком крепкий, и в нем много сахара, а я люблю кофе без сахара.
41. Вас спрашивает какой-то мужчина.
42. Я не люблю темноту, поэтому я включила свет.
43. Он пошел в школу в возрасте шести лет.
44. Слон – самое крупное животное.
45. Вы найдете упражнения на десятой странице.
46. Мы должны сходить в больницу навестить ее.
47. Когда Вы закончили школу?
48. Он родился на Дальнем Востоке.
49. Географическим центром Лондона является Трафальгарская площадь.
50. Он всегда читает «Таймс» за завтраком.
51. Кофе не популярен в Англии, англичане предпочитают чай.

Ex. 11. Use the articles where necessary.

In ... certain region of ... British Isles there is ... very slow train, and as is well known, ... tickets are collected when you pass through ... gates of... station at your destination. ... tall, lean man, on passing out, presented ... half-ticket to the collector. “Hey! Look here! This is not your ticket, sir. This is ... boy’s ticket!” “Well”, answered ... tall man, “I was ... boy when I started”.

... schoolboy who had been working ... good deal of ... arithmetic, came ... home for... summer holidays. One evening there were two pigeons on ... dinner table; and ... boy, who thought himself very clever, said to his

father: “I can prove to you by... arithmetic that those two pigeons are three. “Oh”, said his father, “how do you manage that?” “Well, this is one and that is two and one and two make three”. ”What ... clever boy!”, exclaimed his father. “Then your mother will have ... first. I shall eat ... second, and you can have ...third!”

Ex. 12. Test yourself.

Nobody in ... village would go near ... crossroads after ... midnight. Everybody said ... place was haunted. ... people said there was ... white figure of ... horrible one-eyed woman with ... big black cat. One night Tom and Nick were in ... village pub having ... drink. They were talking about ... ghost at ... crossroads. Tom said he didn` t believe in ... ghosts and could go to ... crossroads after ... midnight by himself.

So ... two men agreed to meet at ... midnight at ... crossroads. Tom wanted to play ... trick on Nick. He came to ... place earlier. He covered his face with... flour, sat down on... stone and waited.

It was ... very dark night. As ... village clock struck twelve Tom saw Nick coming down ... road. When Nick came near ... stone and saw ... white figure of Tom, he ran off down ... road screaming “I`ve seen ... ghost!”

... Next day Tom went down to Nick`s house. Nick was in ... kitchen. He had ... shotgun on ... table. He had not slept ... whole night.

When Tom asked him what ... matter was, Nick said he had seen ... ghost. Tom laughed and said that ... figure on ... stone was he. Now Nick decided to play ... trick on Tom. He said that he had recognized Tom, but there was... one-eyed woman with ... big black cat right behind ... stone.

(After Chris Culchaw “The Ghost at the Crossroads”).

Ex. 13. Test yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Что такое артикль в английском языке?
2. Какие это артикли?
3. Какие формы имеет неопределенный артикль?
4. Как читается неопределенный артикль?
5. С какими существительными употребляется неопределенный артикль?

6. Назовите основные случаи употребления неопределенного артикля?

7. С какими существительными и в каких случаях употребляется определенный артикль?

8. Как употребляется определенный артикль с географическими названиями?

9. Как употребляется определенный артикль с именами собственными?

10. Как употребляется артикль со словами “school”, “prison”, “church”, “hospital”.

11. Назовите несколько устойчивых словосочетаний, которые употребляются с определенным артиклем, неопределенным, без артикля.

UNIT 2. ИМЯ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NOUN)

1. Имя существительное – это часть речи, которая обозначает предмет и отвечает на вопрос «Кто?», «Что?».

2. Имена существительные обычно определяются артиклями и часто сочетаются с предлогами. Артикль и предлог являются основными признаками существительного.

E.g. a table, the table, at the wall, on the table, under the table.

3. Имена существительные имеют два числа: единственное и множественное.

E.g. a table – tables, a book – books.

4. Имена существительные в английском языке имеют 2 падежа: общий и притяжательный:

E.g. worker (общий), worker’s (притяжательный)

5. Род существительных в английском языке определяется не формой слова, а его значением.

6. Имена существительные бывают простые и производные. К простым существительным относятся существительные, которые не имеют в своем составе ни суффиксов, ни префиксов:

E.g. ship, town, wheat

К производным именам существительным относятся существительные, имеющие в своем составе суффиксы и префиксы:

E.g. darkness, worker, development.

Основными суффиксами имен существительных являются –er, -ment, -ness, -ion, -dom, -hood, -ship.

E.g. builder, happiness, freedom, childhood, leadership:

Некоторые существительные являются составными и состоят из двух слов, составляющих одно понятие:

E.g. bedroom, newspaper, reading-room

Некоторые составные существительные образуются из двух слов с предлогом между ними:

E.g. commander-in-chief, mother-in-law

7. Имена существительные делятся на собственные и нарицательные.

1) Собственные существительные представляют собой названия предметов, единственные в своем роде the Volga, London, а также существительные, обозначающие личные имена: Peter, John Smith.

Собственные имена существительные всегда пишутся с прописной буквы. Если имя собственное состоит из нескольких слов, то все слова, за исключением артиклей, предлогов и союзов, пишутся с прописной буквы: the Russian Federation, the Atlantic Ocean, the United States of America.

2) Наричательные имена существительные представляют собой общее название для всех однородных предметов: a boy, a country, a river.

К нарицательным существительным относятся:

☺ имена существительные, обозначающие отдельные предметы (a book, books, a tree, trees), а также существительные, представляющие

собой названия групп лиц или животных, рассматриваемые как одно целое:

E.g. a family, families, a crowd, crowds, a herd, herds;

☺ имена существительные, обозначающие различные вещества:

E.g. water, steel, wool;

☺ имена существительные, обозначающие признаки, действия, состояния, чувства, явления, науки, искусства и т.д.

E.g. bravery, darkness, love, work, sleep, history, music, winter.

8. Имена существительные делятся на две группы: исчисляемые и неисчисляемые.

☺ К исчисляемым существительным относятся существительные, которые можно сосчитать. Они употребляются как в единственном, так и во множественном числе:

E.g. I bought a book yesterday.

I bought three pens yesterday.

☺ К неисчисляемым существительным относятся те существительные, которые нельзя сосчитать. К ним принадлежат вещественные и отвлеченные имена существительные. Неисчисляемые существительные употребляются только в единственном числе:

E.g. He likes milk and cheese.

9. Имена существительные выполняют в предложении следующие функции:

☺ подлежащего: E.g. The train leaves at 6 o'clock.

☺ именной части составного сказуемого: E.g. He is a teacher.

☺ дополнения (прямого, беспредложного косвенного и предложного косвенного):

E.g. We received a telegram yesterday.

I have sent my friend a letter.

I'll speak to the dean.

☺ определения: E.g. This is my mother's hat.

☺ обстоятельства: E.g. there is a school in our street.

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Fill in the table. Don't forget to use countable nouns with the article "a" or "an".

Countable nouns	Uncountable nouns

wool, word, paper, hour, bread, sea, cheese, hero, sand, copper, coin, silver, tree, idea, heat, house, speed, umbrella, happiness, ink, butter.

Ex. 2. Make up nouns by using suffixes –er, -or:

Model: to read – reader, to sail –sailor

paint, drive, dream, compute, lead, design, buy, invent, interpret.

Ex. 3. Make up nouns by using suffixes – ment, -ant, -ness, -ist:

Model: to type – typist

appoint, enjoy, mad, advertise, entertain, develop, material.

Ex. 4. Find the suffixes of the following derivative nouns:

Explanation, coldness, communism, heroism, dramatist, majority, musician, popularity, leadership, brotherhood, drawing.

Ex. 5. Make up a compound noun from two parts:

Model: a bed, a room – a bedroom

a post, a man –

a week, an end –

a side, a board –

milk, a man –

a house, work –

a class, a room –

news, paper –

a man, crafts –

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 6. Form nouns by using suffixes -er, -or, -ment, -ant, -ness, -ist, -an, -ship, -ing, -hood:

Talk, manage, research, strike, visit, direct, translate, move, defend, science, judge, govern, improve, dictate, happy, clever, social, neighbour, friend, dance, drive.

Ex. 7. Make up questions by using new nouns formed from the underlined words:

Model: He works at the plant. – Is he a worker?

1. My friend drives very well.
2. Mary can play the piano.
3. Peter studies at the university.
4. My friend teaches geography at school.
5. Beethoven composed many great pieces of music.
6. He gives lectures at the University.
7. A lot of interesting things are exhibited here.
8. My history professor has written many books.
9. My uncle works in the hospital.
10. This man writes very interesting books.

Ex. 8. Read and translate the following compound nouns:

Foreman, ship-yard, man-of-war, milestone, birthday, record-player, taperecorder, layman, maple-leaf, handicraft, spacecraft, household, housekeeping.

Ex. 9. Answer the questions by using a compound noun made up from two nouns:

Model: A small boat saved his life. What boat was it? – It was a lifeboat.

1. She went to the shop to buy a hat. What shop did she go to?
2. I drank some tea from the cup. What cup did I drink from?
3. This store has a lot of different departments. How can we call such a store?

4. Throw all the waste paper in this basket. How can you call a basket for waste paper?

5. He gave her a ring for her engagement. What kind of a ring did he give to her?

6. I got these books from the library. What books are these?

7. I need a coat to wear in the rain. What coat do I need?

8. This paper appears in the evening. What do we call such a paper?

9. There is a new bag in her hand? How can we call the bag?

10. She makes tea very well. How can we call her?

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 10. Read the text. Make questions to the underlined words:

When you enter our sitting-room, the first thing, you notice is a large window opposite the door. On the left there is an armchair with a small table by it. On the table there are some books and an electric table-lamp. There are two other armchairs in the room and a settee. I like to sit in an armchair by the standard lamp and read a book or listen to the wireless.

Ex. 11. Translate the questions by using the words given below:

hometask, weekend, newspaper, classroom, reading-hall, homework.

1. В какой аудитории вы обычно занимаетесь?

2. Сколько времени уходит у вас на приготовление домашнего задания?

3. Вы предпочитаете делать домашнее задание один или с коллегой по группе?

4. Как часто вы ходите в читальный зал?

5. Вы обычно обедаете в столовой или берете еду с собой?

6. Какие газеты вы читаете каждый день?

7. Где вы обычно проводите субботу и воскресенье?

Ex. 12. Read the sentences. State the function of the nouns.

1. Salt is not expensive.

2. This is my father's book.

3. Do you want a cup of coffee?
4. I am going to the party tonight.
5. I'll stay at home in the evening.
6. How many people live in that house?
7. He put on his pajama and went to bed.
8. My brother's job is very interesting.
9. Write your name at the top of the page.
10. Morning is the best part of the day for me.

ПРИТЯЖАТЕЛЬНЫЙ ПАДЕЖ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ (THE POSSESSIVE CASE).

Английские существительные имеют 2 падежа: общий и притяжательный падеж.

Общий падеж делится на именительный и объектный в соответствии с местом существительного в предложении.

E.g. The student (именительный падеж) met the teacher (объектный падеж).

3. Притяжательный падеж образуется добавлением апострофа (') и окончания –“s” к существительным в единственном числе и прибавлением только апострофа к существительным во множественном числе.

E.g. the girl's hat– the girls' hats
the worker's tool– the workers' tools.

☺ Составные существительные обычно рассматриваются как одно слово.

E.g. my mother-in-law's house.

Апостроф и –“s” могут относиться к целой группе слов.

E.g. Jane and Peter' flat is good.

4. –“s” в притяжательном падеже читается по тем же правилам, что и окончание –“s” у существительных во множественном числе.

[z] – после гласных и звонких согласных the boy's dog, the man's hat.

[s] – после глухих согласных : Smith's house, Jack's flat.

[ɪz]– после s, ss, x, ch, sh: the horse's tail.

Притяжательный падеж употребляется:

☺ При разговоре о людях и иногда о животных.

E.g. the student's book, the teacher's explanations, the dog's food.

☺ С фразами, обозначающими время, пространство.

E.g. a day's journey, a week's holiday, three month's absence, a stone's throw, a needle's point.

☺ С существительными, обозначающими страны, и корабли, а также со словами "world", "country", "city", "ship".

E.g. The Bolshoy Theatre is Russia's best opera house.

I like to go to Moscow's art galleries.

☺ Со словами "today", "yesterday".

E.g. Today's news, yesterday's newspaper.

☺ Следует обратить внимание на употребление в притяжательном падеже некоторых неодушевленных имен существительных: biography's data, resort's weather, senate's committee.

☺ Неодушевленные имена существительные образуют притяжательный падеж при помощи предлога "of".

E.g. the tables of the classroom.

the roof of the house.

☺ Притяжательный падеж выражает принадлежность чего-либо кому-либо.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Use the possessive case instead of "of" phrases.

1. the title of the book.
2. the economy of the country.
3. the decision of the government.
4. The work of the next week.
5. the holiday of three weeks.
6. the wedding of Tom and Jane.

7. the toys of my children.
8. the bedroom of my sisters.
9. the newspaper of the last Saturday.
10. the hobby of my wife.

Ex. 2. Answer the questions from given below. Use the necessary nouns from given below.

1. Where do you buy bread?
2. Where do you buy milk?
3. Where do you buy meat?
4. Where do you buy fruit and vegetables?
5. Where can you have your dress made?
6. Where can you order a new suit?
7. Where can you buy flowers?
8. Where can you have your watch repaired?
9. Where can you have your prescription made?
10. Where can you have your hair cut and made?

Baker's, butcher's, florist's, watchmaker's, tailor's, chemist's, greengrocer's, hairdresser's, dressmaker's, milkman's.

Ex. 3. Translate into English using the possessive case.

1. книга моего друга
книги моего друга
книга моих друзей
книги моих друзей
2. мяч девочки – мячи девочек
мячи девочки
мяч девочек
3. игрушка моего друга
игрушки моего друга
игрушка моих детей
игрушки моих детей.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Put the nouns with „of“ into the possessive case where possible.

1. the watch of my friend Peter.
2. the voice of his sister.
3. the new club of the workers.
4. the birthday of my nephew.
5. the boat of the fisherman.
6. the prescription of the doctor.
7. the books of Mr. Smith and Mr. Jones.
8. an interval of two weeks.
9. a journey of a day.
10. the walls of the room.
11. the drawing of the children.
12. the windows of the house.
13. the holiday of one month.
14. the crew of the ship.
15. the lights of Moscow.

Ex. 5. Complete the sentences, using the nouns in the possessive case.

1. My aunt is my ...sister. .
2. My cousin Jane is... my daughter
3. My mother has a sister; her son is my... nephew.
4. My... father is my father-in-law.
5. My... parents are my grandparents.
6. My...children are my grandchildren.
7. My uncle is
8. My brother is
9. My cousin
10. My father is

Ex. 6. Change the sentences using the possessive case.

Model : His brother has a large flat. His brother's flat is large.

1. Her son has a small family.
2. Their daughter has a good friend.

3. His son has a black cat.
4. My grandmother has a grey cat.
5. Our father has a new hat.
6. My brother has an old car.
7. My mother has a beautiful flower.
8. Your sister has a nice dress.
9. Your mother has a large room.
10. Her sister has a new bag.

Ex. 7. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Дом моей бабушки.
2. Часы моего дедушки.
3. Книжки этих детей.
4. Экипаж корабля.
5. Вчерашняя поездка.
6. Города страны.
7. Университеты Москвы.
8. Двухмесячный отпуск.
9. Пианино моей сестры.
10. Фрукты этого фермера.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences from Russian into English.

1. Где сегодняшняя газета?
2. Давайте сделаем пятиминутный перерыв.
3. Спальня мальчиков наверху.
4. Это детская игра.
5. Семья миссис Росс живет на юге Англии.
6. Он друг моего брата.
7. Я обедал вчера у моего друга.
8. – Где мама? – Она пошла в булочную
9. Через неделю у него будет месячный отпуск.
10. Я провела праздники у своей тётки.
11. Мы должны пойти в молочную и купить молока и сметаны.
12. Вчера я была 2 часа у парикмахера.
13. Мы чиним часы в часовой мастерской.

14. Мой друг занял первое место во вчерашнем соревновании.
15. Экипаж этого корабля состоит из 20 человек.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 9. Paraphrase the following words and sentences using the possessive case.

1. The father of my friend.
2. The question of my sister.
3. The table of my brother.
4. The wife of our teacher.
5. The poems of Pushkin.
6. The voice of this girl.
7. The car of my sister.
8. The Institute of that girl.
9. The life of this writer.
10. The toys of her children.
11. The car of the Smiths.
12. The firm of our friends.
13. The flat of my brother is large.
14. The name of this girl is Jane.
15. The work of these students is interesting.
16. The flat of my friend is in a new house.
17. It`s a car of my father.

Ex. 10. Translate into English.

Model: отец Питера– Peter`s father.

1. Зонт Анны.
2. Шляпа Мэри.
3. Ноутбук Джона.
4. Решение детей.
5. Книги студентов на столе.
6. Жена его брата – менеджер.
7. Это компьютер моего дяди.
8. Комната родителей – большая.

9. Машина Гринов – новая.
10. Тетя Мэгги– менеджер.
11. Сын ее сестер– хороший ученик.
12. Имена моих братьев– Марк и Том.
13. Любимая еда Боба– пицца.

Ex. 11. Translate into Russian. Pay attention to the possessive case.

1. Professor David Crystal is one of the world's foremost (выдающихся) experts on language.
2. Moscow's theatres are the best in the world.
3. Pickpocket steals things from people's pocket in crowded places.
4. They accepted the court's decision.
5. Frida's father was against her marrying Diego.
6. I don't know him well– he is a friend's neighbour.
7. Why was she dressed in a man's suit?
8. Beth loved the traditional women's Mexican dresses she used to wear.
9. Which is Polly's car?
10. He sat down to wait for the doctor's return.
11. He couldn't pay his daughter's medical expenses any more.

Ex. 12. Choose the right variant.

1. Дом Питера и Марии.
 - a) Mary's and Peter's house
 - b) Mary's and Peter house
 - c) Mary and Peter's house
2. Игрушки детей.
 - a) children's toys
 - b) childrens' toys
 - c) child's toys
3. Вчерашняя газета.
 - a) yesterdays' newspaper
 - b) yesterday's newspaper
 - c) yesterday newspaper

4. Бабушкино кресло.
 - a) grandmother's armchair
 - b) grandmothers' armchair
 - c) grandfather's armchair
5. Стены дома.
 - a) the house's walls.
 - b) the houses' walls
 - c) the walls of the house.
6. Экипаж корабля
 - a) the crew of the ship
 - b) the ship's crew
 - c) the ship of the crew
7. Огни Москвы
 - a) the lights of Moscow
 - b) Moscow's lights
 - c) Moscows' lights
8. В булочной
 - a) at the baker's
 - b) in the baker's
 - c) at the bakers'
9. Недельный отпуск
 - a) a week's holiday
 - b) weeks' holiday
 - c) holiday of a week
10. Пятиминутный перерыв.
 - a) five minutes' break
 - b) five minute's break
 - c) a break of five minutes.
11. Улицы города
 - a) the town's street
 - b) the streets of the town
 - c) the town of the streets
12. Книги моих сестер.
 - a) my sister's books
 - b) my sisters' books
 - c) my sister' books

МНОЖЕСТВЕННОЕ ЧИСЛО СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНЫХ (THE PLURAL OF THE NOUNS)

1. В английском языке множественное число имен существительных образуется прибавлением окончания – **s** или – **es** к форме существительного в единственном числе:

E.g. pen – pens, fox – foxes, boy – boys

2. Окончание – **s** читается:

[s] после глухих согласных

[z] после звонких согласных и гласных

[ɪz] после s, ss, sh, ch, tch, x, c, z, g:

E.g. hand – hands, shoe – shoes [z]

map – maps, rock – rocks [s]

class – classes, box – boxes [ɪz]

3. Имена существительные, оканчивающиеся на – **o** образуют множественное число при помощи окончания – **es**:

E.g. cargo – cargoes, hero – heroes, tomato – tomatoes

Исключения: piano – pianos, photo – photos

4. Имена существительные, оканчивающиеся в единственном числе на – **y** с предшествующей согласной образуют множественное число при помощи окончания – **es**, при этом «**y**» заменяется на «**i**»:

E.g. city – cities, boy – boys, day – days

Имена существительные, оканчивающиеся на «**f**» или «**fe**» образуют множественное число при помощи окончания – **es**, при этом «**f**» меняется на «**v**»:

E.g. leaf – leaves, knife – knives

Исключения: chief – chiefs, roof – roofs

5. Некоторые имена существительные образуют множественное число путем изменения корневой гласной или прибавлением окончания. Эти формы необходимо заучить наизусть!

E. g. man – men, woman – women, foot – feet, tooth – teeth, goose – geese, mouse – mice, ox – oxen, child – children.

6. Имена существительные, заимствованные из греческого и латинского языков, сохранили форму множественного числа из этих языков:

datum – data, erratum – errata, phenomenon – phenomena, crisis – crises

7. Существительное «penny» (пенс) имеет форму множественного числа «pence», когда речь идет о денежной сумме. Когда же речь идет об отдельных монетах, употребляется форма «pennies»:

E.g. It costs eighteen pence.

Pennies are made of bronze.

☺ Существительные “sheep, fish, deer, swine” имеют одну и ту же форму для единственного и множественного числа:

E.g. a sheep – five sheep, a fish – three fish

Когда речь идет о различных видах рыб, «fish» имеет форму множественного числа:

E.g. There are many fishes in this lake.

☺ Существительное «dozen» (дюжина) и «score» (двадцать) имеют одну и ту же форму единственного и множественного числа, если они стоят после числительных:

two dozen eggs (две дюжины яиц)

three score (of) years (шестьдесят лет)

Когда эти существительные не сопровождаются числительными, они образуют множественное число путем добавления окончания –s:

E.g. Pack the books in dozens, please. Scores of people were present there.

☺ Существительное «works» (завод, заводы) употребляется со значением как единственного, так и множественного числа:

E.g. A new glass work has been built near the village. There are two brick works outside the town.

☺ Существительное «means» (средство, средства), «gates» (ворота), «sledge» (сани), “watch” (часы) употребляются со значением как единственного, так и множественного числа.

E.g. He found a means of helping them.
Are there any other means of helping them?
The gate is open. All the gates were closed.
My watch is on the table.
He has two watches.

8. В составных именах существительных, которые пишутся раздельно, форму множественного числа обычно принимает основное в смысловом отношении слово.

E.g. custom-house – custom-houses, hotel-keeper – hotel-keepers, mother-in-law – mothers-in-law

☺ Если составное существительное не имеет в своем составе слова с основным смысловым значением, то окончание – “s” добавляется к последнему слову:

E.g. forget-me-not – forget-me-nots, merry-go-round – merry-go-rounds

Если первым словом составного существительного являются слова «man» или «woman», тогда оба слова принимают форму множественного числа:

E.g. man-servant – men-servants, woman-doctor – women-doctors

☺ Составные существительные, которые пишутся слитно, образуют множественное число по тому правилу, которому подчиняется второе слово, входящее в его состав:

E.g. schoolboy – schoolboys, housewife – housewives, postman – postmen

9. Существительные, употребляющиеся только в единственном числе:

☺ Неисчисляемые существительные (вещественные и отвлеченные):

sugar, iron, love, friendship, advice (совет, советы), information (информация, сообщение, сведения), success (успех), knowledge (знания, знание), news (новость, новости)

☺ названия наук, оканчивающиеся на - ics: Mathematics, Physics, Phonetics

☺ существительные money, hair, fruit (fruits для обозначения многих видов фруктов)

E.g. He gave me some good advice.

I am satisfied with your progress.

What is the news?

Mathematics forms the basis of many other sciences.

Her hair is dark.

This money belongs to him.

Fruit is cheap in summer.

There are apples, plumes and other fruits on the table.

10. Существительные, употребляющиеся только во множественном числе:

scissors (ножницы)

trousers (брюки)

spectacles (очки)

scales (весы)

tongs (щипцы)

goods (товар)

contents (содержание)

clothes (одежда)

wages (заработная плата)

people (люди)

Существительное «people», обозначающее «народ, нация» употребляется как в единственном, так и во множественном числе:

E.g. The trousers are too long.

Where are the spectacles?

These goods have arrived from China.

His clothes are wet.

There were many people there.

A lot of peoples live in Russia.

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Write the plural form of the nouns:

an orange, a zero, a story, a loaf, a mouth, a brother, a cow, a class, an architect, a colour, a magazine, a fox, a toy, a dress, a party, a hero, a clock, a foot, a child, a postman, a son-in-law, a statesman.

Ex. 2. Put the underlined nouns in the plural form:

1. Put the box on the shelf.
2. I have hurt my foot.
3. This is an English dictionary.
4. Where is the knife?
5. This factory has a good laboratory.
6. The last leaf fell from the tree.
7. This story is very long.
8. The speech was very interesting.
9. He left the key on the table.
10. Where is the brush?
11. The roof of the house was covered with snow.
12. The wife of the sailor came to the shore.

Ex. 3. Choose the right word in brackets:

1. Her pyjamas (was, were) in the wardrobe.
2. If you want (this, these) goods, you can have (it, them).
3. He unpacked his clothes and put (it, them) on the upper shelf in the wardrobe.
4. Plenty of cheese (is, are) imported from France.
5. I seldom ask other's people advice and never take (it, them).
6. The news (was, were) not the best.
7. This family (is, are) at the party.
8. The wages (is, are) paid once a month by the account.
9. Thirty years (is, are) a long time.
10. Poultry (is, are) very expensive this year.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Write the plural form of the following nouns:

family, woman, duck, lake, photo, tomato, game, sheep, uncle, pony, leaf, belief, face, tooth, kerchief, mouse, umbrella, curriculum, knife, life, path, class, roof, grass, cup, city, phenomenon, room, pipe, year, child, voice, deer, schoolgirl, text-book, passer-by, armchair, money.

Ex. 5. Write the singular form of the following nouns:

moments, wives, kitchens, men, roads, clocks, lice, replies, drops, ships, sheep, geese, days, oceans, rivers, radios, universities, ways, wolves, mice, oxen.

Ex. 6. Use the verbs in the correct form:

1. My watch (to be) ten minutes fast. 2) These data (to be) not accurate. 3) No news (to be) good news. 4) Mathematics (to be) my favourite subject when I was at school. 5) Money (to do) not make you happy. 6) Your clothes (to hang) on the chair. 7) The goods (to have) arrived. 8) The pyjamas (to be) short. 9) Your advice (to have) helped me greatly. 10) Mice (to be) also domestic animals. 11) Your hair (to need) cutting.

Ex. 7. Translate into English:

1. У нее красивые длинные волосы. 2. У них на ферме гуси, утки, овцы и козы, а еще есть пруд, где много рыбы. 3. Часы на стене показывают полночь. 4. За ним гналась полиция. 5. Женщины и дети выехали из города. 6. Содержание фильма было мне знакомо. 7. Твоя одежда грязная, сними ее. 8. Летом мы едим много фруктов. 9. Я купил эти часы в Санкт-Петербурге. Они такие красивые. 10. Я не мог войти в сад, так как ворота были закрыты. 11. Эти новости очень интересные. 12. Мыши серого цвета.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 8. Insert "is" or "are":

1. ... the shop open?
2. My hands ... cold.

3. Where ... my glasses?
4. Where ... the child?
5. Who ... those men?
6. Where ... the scissors?
7. Mice ... small animals.
8. Your jeans ... dirty.
9. There ... a lot of people in the square.
10. The leaves on the trees ... yellow.

Ex. 9. Choose the right variant:

1. It is a lovely park with a lot of beautiful (tree, trees).
2. There are a lot of (sheep, sheeps) in that field.
3. Do you make many (mistake, mistakes) in that field?
4. She is married and has three (child, children).
5. He put on his (pyjama, pyjamas) and went to bed.
6. Most of my (friend, friends) are students.
7. We went fishing but didn't catch many (fish, fishes).
8. I like your (trouser, trousers). Where did you get (it, them)?
9. The town's centre is usually full of (tourist, tourists).
10. This (scissor, scissors) (isn't, aren't) very sharp.

Ex. 10. Finish the sentences by choosing the correct answer:

1. It's a nice place. Many people (go / goes) there for a holiday.
2. Some people (is / are) always late.
3. The president is not popular. The people (don't / doesn't) like him.
4. A lot of people (watch / watches) television every day.
5. Three people (was / were) killed in the accident.
6. How many people (live / lives) in that house?
7. (Do / Does) the police carry guns in your country?
8. The police (is / are) looking for the stolen car.
9. I need my glasses, but I can't find (it / them).
10. I am going to buy (a / some) new trousers today.

Ex. 11. Choose the correct answer:

1. They decided to open a season. Though it was a fashionable party and the walls were decorated with ... and ... the majority of the guests ... wearing jeans and T-shirts.

- a) lilies-of-the-valley, forget-me-nots, were
- b) lily-of-the-valleys, forget-me-nots, were
- c) lilics-of-the-valley, forgets-me-not, was
- d) lilies-of-the-valleys, forgets-me-nots, was

2. He pulled off his gloves and put ... onto the dressing table. She noticed that ... brand new. So was his hat.

- a) it, it was
- b) it, they were
- c) them, it was
- d) them, they were

3. Look, Mary is playing with the scissors! Take ... away from her, ...may cut into her fingers.

- a) it, it
- b) them, it
- c) it, they
- d) them, they

4. Here ... the pocket money my uncle has sent me today. ... will be enough to settle all my debts.

- a) are, it
- b) is, they
- c) is, it
- d) are, they

5. That species of birds ... migrant and ... found in Africa in winter. Our surroundings ... too severe for such birds and they leave ... early in September.

- a) is, is, are, them
- b) are, are, are, them

- c) is, is, is, it
- d) are, are, is, it

6. There ... a lot of machinery in the shop and skilled workers operated

- a) was, them
- b) were, them
- c) were, it
- d) was, it

7. Where ... Nick's pyjamas? - ... on the bed.

- a) is. It is
- b) are. They are
- c) is. They are
- d) are. It is

8. Bread and cheese ... his usual meal and he has been living on ... for two month.

- a) was, them
- b) are, it
- c) is, it
- d) is, them

9. The latest news from the Middle East countries ... disturbing. A close-up camera showed a man running somewhere. His face was bruised and his clothes ... torn.

- a) was, was
- b) were, were
- c) was, were
- d) were, was

10. The crossroads at our supermarket ... a dangerous place. The traffic lights keep both pedestrians and drivers to avoid accidents. The police ... to set ... here.

- a) are, needs, them
- b) is, need, them

- c) are, needs, it
- d) is, need, it

Ex. 12. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

- 1) Что такое имя существительное?
- 2) Чем определяется имя существительное?
- 3) Какие числа и падежи имеет имя существительное в английском языке?
- 4) Как определяется род имени существительного?
- 5) На какие группы делятся имена существительные?
- 6) Назовите основные суффиксы имен существительных.
- 7) Какие функции в предложении выполняет имя существительное?
- 8) Как образуют множественное число большинство английских существительных?
- 9) Какие особенности в правописании существительных при образовании множественного числа вы знаете?
- 10) Как образовывается множественное число составных имен существительных?
- 11) Назовите существительные, употребляющиеся только в единственном числе.
- 12) Назовите существительные, употребляющиеся только во множественном числе.

UNIT 3. МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ (THE PRONOUN)

Местоимение – это часть речи, которая употребляется вместо имени существительного или имени прилагательного.

E.g. Pushkin is the greatest Russian poet. **He** was born in 1799.

Местоимения делятся на следующие группы: личные, притяжательные, возвратные, взаимные, указательные, вопросительные, неопределенные и относительные.

Личные местоимения (Personal pronouns)

	Единственное число		Множественное число	
	Имен. падеж	Объект. падеж	Имен. падеж	Объект. падеж
1 лицо	I	me	we	us
2 лицо	you	you	you	you
3 лицо	he she it	him her it	they	them

Личные местоимения в английском языке имеют формы двух падежей: именительного (the Nominative Case) и объектного (the Objective Case). Объектный падеж соответствует косвенным падежам русского языка.

Личные местоимения в именительном падеже выполняют синтаксическую функцию подлежащего, в объектном падеже являются дополнением (прямым, косвенным, предложным):

E.g. **I** get up at seven. **He** likes French books.

We met **them** at the station. She showed her new book to **us**. I don't agree with **him**.

Местоимение **it** заменяет существительное, обозначающее неодушевленный предмет и соответствует русским существительным *он, она* или *оно* в зависимости от рода существительного. **It** употребляется также по отношению к животным, когда их пол для говорящего неизвестен или безразличен:

E.g. Where is **the book**? – **It** is on the shelf.

Look at **this puppy**! **It** is playing with the ball.

Местоимение **they** заменяет как одушевленные, так и неодушевленные существительные:

E.g. **The children** have classes every day. – **They** have classes every day.

The stories are rather interesting. – **They** are rather interesting.

Местоимение **you** представляет собой форму множественного числа, но может относиться как ко многим лицам, так и к одному лицу в значении местоимения 2 лица единственного числа:

E.g. Children, where are **you**?

Peter, where are **you**?

Притяжательные местоимения (Possessive pronouns)

	Единственное число		Множественное число	
	Присоединяемая форма	Абсолютная форма	Присоединяемая форма	Абсолютная форма
1 лицо	my	mine	our	ours
2 лицо	your	your	your	yours
3 лицо	his her its	his hers its	their	theirs

Притяжательные местоимения выражают принадлежность и отвечают на вопрос **whose** (чей, чья, чье?). Притяжательные местоимения имеют две формы: присоединяемую и абсолютную. Местоимения в присоединяемой форме употребляются в функции определения перед существительным:

E.g. This is **his** pencil-box. The cat ate **its** food.

Местоимение в абсолютной форме употребляется как слово заменитель существительного, выполняя при этом функцию подлежащего, дополнения или именной части сказуемого:

E.g. Give me your pencil! **Mine** is broken.

This is not our book, **ours** is at home.

Возвратные местоимения (Reflexive pronouns)

	Единственное число		Множественное число	
	Личное местоимение	Возвратное местоимение	Личное местоимение	Возвратное местоимение
1 лицо	I	myself	we	ourselves
2 лицо	you	yourself	you	yourselves
3 лицо	he she it	himself herself itself	they	themselves

E.g. I can do that **myself**.

Don't make a fool of **yourself**!

This machine works **itself**.

Указательные местоимения (Demonstrative pronouns)

Единственное число	Множественное число
this	these
Используются для указания на близлежащий предмет (предметы) и лица, настоящие или будущие ситуации; когда говорящий находится в том месте, на которое он ссылается; в телефонном разговоре – чтобы представить человека	
that	those
Используются для указания на отдаленный от говорящего предмет (предметы) и лица, прошедшие ситуации или что-то, упомянутое ранее; в телефонном разговоре – чтобы спросить, кто звонит.	

К указательным местоимениям относится также местоимение **such** (такой, таковой), которое употребляется как в качестве местоимения-прилагательного, так и местоимения-существительного.

E.g. These are such interesting books!

Such was the agreement between the two parties.

Когда **such** определяет исчисляемое существительное в единственном числе, то существительное употребляется с неопределенным артиклем, который ставится после **such**:

E.g. It is such an interesting book!

Вопросительные местоимения (Interrogative pronouns)

Вопросительные местоимения, прилагательные, наречия	Перевод	Пример
Who	Кто	Who is that man? Who has finished the test?
Whom	Кого (местоимение «Кто» в косвенных падежах)	Whom did you meet there? Whom did he help?
Whose	Чей	Whose book is this? Whose pen did you take?
What	Что	What have you brought? What do you mean?
	Какой	What books did you buy? What colour do you like?

Which	Какой Который (выбор из ограниченного количества)	Which chapter did you like best? Which of you speaks French?
Where	Где Куда	Where are the students? Where are you going?
When	Когда	When do you usually get up?
Why	Почему	Why are you crying?
How	Как	How did you do that?
How many	Сколько (с исчисляемыми существительными)	How many photos did you take?
How much	Сколько (с неисчисляемыми существительными)	How much time do you have?

Неопределенные местоимения (Indefinite Pronouns) и их производные

Тип предложения	Какой?	Кто?	Что?	Где?
Утвердительные	some (какой-то, несколько, немного) any (любой)	Someone / somebody (кто-то) anyone / anybody (любой, кто угодно)	something (что-то) anything (любая вещь, что угодно)	somewhere (где-то) anywhere (везде, где угодно)
Примеры	Give me some bread, please! Take any cake you like! They are all tasty.	I saw somebody in the cellar. Anybody can tell you the way to the station.	There is something on the shelf. You can take anything you like.	Where is my umbrella? – It's somewhere in the living-room. Where do you want to go on holiday? – Anywhere hot.
Вопросительные	any (какой-нибудь) some	anyone / anybody	anything (что-нибудь)	anywhere (где-нибудь)

	(несколько, немного – в просьбах и предложениях)	(кто-нибудь)		
Примеры	Is there any bread on the table? Do you want some milk?	Is there anyone in the room?	Have you got anything to read?	Is the ball anywhere in the yard?
Отрицательные	no / not any (никакой)	no one / not anyone nobody / not anybody (никто)	nothing / not anything (ничто, ничего)	nowhere / not anywhere (нигде, никуда)
Примеры	There is no bread on the table. There isn't any bread on the table.	There is no one in the room. There isn't anybody in the room.	There is nothing on the table. There isn't anything on the table.	The station is nowhere near here. The station isn't anywhere near here.
Все типы	every (каждый)	everybody / everyone (все)	everything (всё)	everywhere (езде, повсюду)
Примеры	I see him at work almost every day.	Everybody knows the truth.	We know everything about him.	This credit card is very good. You can use it everywhere .

Местоимения **other, another**

Местоимения **other** и **another** употребляются в предложении как в функции существительного, так и в функции прилагательного (**another** только с исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе в значении *еще один, любой другой*). Местоимения **others** и **the others** используются без существительного.

E.g. Can I have another apple?

I don't like this book. Give me another, please.

The house is on the other side of the street.

He has other plans.

There are only two magazines. Where are the others?

Some people like travelling by air, others don't.

other – *другие* из неопределенного количества

another – *другой* как один из неопределенного количества

the other – *другой (другие)* как оставшийся (оставшиеся) из определенного количества

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Replace the words in bold type by personal pronouns.

1. **John** is glad to see you. 2. **The man** is in the garden. 3. **The men** are not at home now. 4. **The women** are not here. 5. **The cup** is on the table. 6. Are **Ann and Nick** ready to go? 7. **Peter and I** are good friends. 8. Where is **my text-book**? 9. **Our little daughter** is already in her bed. 10. I don't like **winter**.

Ex. 2. Fill in suitable personal pronouns.

1. Where is Ann? I would like to speak to
2. I'm talking to you, please, listen to
3. These plums are bad. Don't eat
4. I want to see him but ... doesn't want to see
5. He likes that camera. He is going to buy
6. "Where are my glasses?" – "... are on the table".
7. She is so beautiful, I envy
8. We are going shopping. Will you go with ... ?
9. He wrote this letter. I recognized ... by his handwriting.
10. They want the money. Please give ... to

Ex. 3. Choose the correct form of the pronouns in brackets.

1. What colour is the shirt? It is so far that I can't see (it's/its/it) colour.
2. They rarely drive to (their/them/ theirs) office. They live near (it's/it/its).

3. Look at (me/ mine/my) new watch. Do you like (it/them/its)? 4. These books are (her/hers). Give (them/their/theirs) to (hers/ her). 5. Do you like (you/your/yours) new car? Oh, (it's/it/its) has never let me down yet. 6. Why are (you/your/yours) sitting here? It is not (you/your/yours) desk, it is (me/ mine/my). 7. The clock has stopped. Something may be wrong with (it's/it/its) spring. 8. (We/Our/Ours) was the last turn. 9. If these gloves are neither (she/her/hers) nor (you/your/yours), then they should be (me/my/mine). 10. He can live without (me/my/mine) help but not without (them/their/theirs).

Ex. 4. Choose the correct form of the interrogative pronouns in brackets.

1. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) is that man?
2. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) do you love?
3. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) was on the table?
4. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) tried to meet you?
5. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) does he insist on?
6. (Who\What\ Whose\Which\ Whom) money is it?
7. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) did you send the letter?
8. (Who\What\Whose\Which\Whom) of the dogs is yours?

Ex. 5. Read and translate the text paying attention to the reflexive pronouns.

Friday the 13th.

Yesterday was Friday the 13th. Many people believe that Friday the 13th is a very unlucky day. I, myself, didn't think so ... until yesterday.

Yesterday I cut myself while I was shaving. My wife hurt herself while she was making breakfast. My son poked himself in the eyes while he was putting on his glasses. Our daughter spilled soup over herself while she was having dinner. Both our children hurt themselves while they were playing outside. And we all got wet paint all over ourselves while we were sitting in the park across the street.

Yesterday was a very unlucky day.

Ex. 6. Choose the correct form of the demonstrative pronouns in brackets.

1. (This\These) news was interesting. 2) He said (that\those) strange words. 3) (This\These) letter was received in the morning. 4) (This\These) meetings were pleasant. 5) We couldn't avoid (that\those) unpleasant subjects. 6) (This\These) condition was impossible. 7) I like (that\those) dog. 8) I don't know (that\those) address. 9) (This\These) documents were brought away. 10) Under (that\those) circumstances it was strange.

Ex. 7. Fill in the correct demonstrative pronouns.

1. Which flowers do you want? ... or ... ?
2. ... is Ann speaking.
3. ...is why she accepted his proposal.
4. ... day was the worst of his life.
5. ... is what I think.
6. ... was the biggest mistake in his life.
7. What are you doing ... Sunday?
8. Hello, ... is Mr. Cook. Can I speak to Mr. Brown, please?
9. ... biscuits are delicious. Did you make them yourself?
10. ... records you threw out were my original hits from the seventies!

Ex. 8. Fill in suitable pronouns.

a) *some, any, no, every:*

1. There is ... water in the glass. May I drink it?
2. Have you seen ... of these people before?
3. She bought ... bread in the shop.
4. Has she got ... children?
5. There is ... coffee in my cup.
6. I looked through ... magazines, but couldn't find this article.
7. Are there ... pupils in the class-room?

b) *somebody, anybody, nobody, everybody:*

1. Look! ... is coming to us.
2. What is his name? Does ... know his name?
3. ... can answer your question. It's very difficult.

- 4.It's late. There is ... in the office.
- 5.Listen. ... is singing in the next room.
- 6.I can find ... to help me.
- 7.Is there ... at home?

c) *somewhere, anywhere, nowhere:*

1. I left my bag
- 2.I don't want to stay at home. Do you want to go ... ?
- 3.Did you go ... last Saturday?
- 4.We could not find our dog
- 5.I think this house is ... here.
- 6.He can't find his book. He put it ... yesterday.
- 7.She will go ... tomorrow. She will stay at home.

d) *something, anything, nothing:*

1. Do you know ... about this country?
2. You may write ... you want in this composition.
3. Have you found ... interesting in his story?
4. I see ... in this room. It's too dark.
5. Do you want to buy ... special?
6. I have never seen ... like this.
7. Nobody tells me

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 9. Choose the correct form of pronouns in brackets.

1. It may be (our, ours) dictionaries. 2. He has not read a line of (your, yours). How can he criticise (your, yours) poems? 3. His composition is much more interesting than (your, yours) or (my, mine). 4. (Their, theirs) knowledge of the subject is not much superior to (our, ours). 5. I'm afraid they will take (her, hers) advice, not (your, yours). 6. All (our, ours) clothes were extremely dirty, and (my, mine) especially so. 7. Will you help me to sort out the things? I cannot tell which are (your, yours) and which are (my, mine). 8. This is (your, yours) note-book, but where is (my, mine)?

Ex. 10. Translate into English.

1. Машина мистера Брауна в гараже, а наша напротив дома.
2. Этот чемодан не мой, это их. 3. Ее родители живут в центре города, а его - на окраине. 4. Я знаю ваш адрес, но я не знаю их адрес. 5. Это мое мнение, я вижу, оно отличается от твоего. 6. Это ваша записная книжка, а это его, но где же моя? 7. Твой билет на столе, а ее билет - в сумке. 8. Самое лучшее предложение - ваше. 9. Его мама сейчас в деревне, а моя - в городе. 10. Где твоя фотография? - Она в альбоме.

Ex. 11. Use one of the demonstrative pronouns in the following sentences:

1. ... is cooking oil, I always buy ... one. 2. She gave me the ... present as a year before. 3. What do you want me to do with ... thing? 4. He was one of ... men whom all women like. 5. Do you see ... bushes on the other side of the river? 6. Let us leave ... subject. 7. I believe you but there are ... who wouldn't. 8. ... is what I thought last year. 9. ... is life. 10. Our house was next to ... of June's.

Ex. 12. Insert interrogative pronouns:

1. ... are you going? 2. ... do we call the sea between England and France? 3. ... are your intentions for the summer? 4. ... would you like to see as your assistant? 5. ... turn is it now? 6. ... is speaking? 7. ... is he? Is he a lawyer? 8. ... are you working now? 10. ... do you live?

Ex. 13. Finish the sentences using proper reflexive pronouns.

1. It is easy to translate this text. I can do it 2. My brother is only three years old. But he can wash and dress 3. He can't believe that he took the first prize. 4. You can make a cup of coffee for 5. Don't worry about us. We can take care of 6. Who told you they got married? Helen 7. The taxi didn't come and we had to carry our heavy luggage 8. She looked at in the mirror and was satisfied. 9. She learnt English 10. The knife is very sharp. Don't cut 11. The play was interesting but the acting was poor.

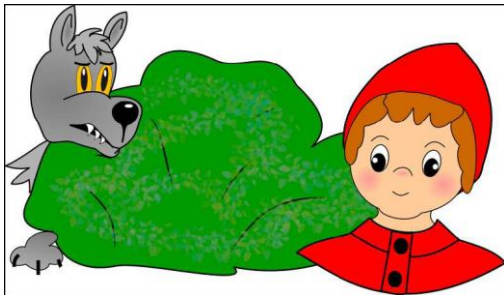
C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 14. Open the brackets using proper pronouns.

Little Red Riding Hood

Once upon a time there was a girl called Little Red Riding Hood. Together with *(she)* ... mum, *(she)* ... lived in a big forest.

One fine day, the mother said, “*(You)* ... grandma is ill. Please go and take *(she)* ... a cake and a bottle of wine. Grandma's house is not too far away from *(we)* ... house, but please do always keep to the path and don't stop!” So, Little Red Riding Hood made *(she)* ... way to grandma's house.



In the forest *(she)* ... met a big bad wolf. Little Red Riding Hood greeted *(he)* ... and the wolf asked, “Where are *(you)* ... going, Little Red Riding Hood?” “To *(I)* ... grandma's house,” answered Little Red Riding Hood. “Can you tell *(I)* ... where *(you)* ... grandma lives?” “*(She)* ... lives in a little cottage at the edge of the forest.” “Why don't *(you)* ... pick some nice flowers for *(she)* ...?” asked the wolf. “That's a good idea,” said Little Red Riding Hood and began looking for the flowers.

Meanwhile, the wolf was on *(he)* ... way to grandma's house. The house was quite small but nice and *(it)* ... roof was made out of straw. The wolf went inside and swallowed the poor old grandma. After that *(he)* ... put on *(she)* ... clothes and lay down in grandma's bed.

Some time later, Little Red Riding Hood came to the little cottage. *(She)* ... went inside and was shocked by the sight of *(she)* ... grandma. “Oh grandma, what big eyes, hands and a mouth *(you)* ... have got!” Little Red Riding Hood said.

There, the wolf jumped out of bed and swallowed *(she)* ..., too. Then *(he)* ... lay down again and fell asleep.

After a while, a hunter passed by Grandma's house. *(He)* ... heard somebody snoring, thought that there was something wrong and consequently went inside. In the bedroom, *(he)* ... saw the wolf. First, the hunter wanted to shoot *(he)* But then *(he)* ... saw the wolf's big belly.

So, the hunter took out (*he*) ... knife and cut the wolf's belly open. Out came Little Red Riding Hood and (*she*) ... grandma.

“Thank you for saving (*we*) ...,” whispered Little Red Riding Hood. Then, all of (*they*) ... went to fetch some stones and put (*they*) ... in the wolf's belly.

Soon the wolf woke up. (*He*) ... was very thirsty and went to the well in the garden to get some water. When the wolf wanted to lean over and drink, the stones in (*he*) ... belly were too heavy and pulled (*he*) ... down into the well.

Grandma, the hunter and Little Red Riding Hood were happy, ate (*they*) ... cake and drank the wine. But in the well, the wolf thought, “Why do such things always happen to (*I*) ...?”

- *The End* -

Ex. 15. Translate into English:

1. Кто-то пришел. Ты кого-то ждешь? 2. Врач что-то написал на бумаге и дал ее мне. 3. Посмотри, кто-то забыл сумку на столе. 4. Он бизнесмен. У него нет свободного времени. 5. Вы должны гулять в любую погоду. 6. На небе нет звезд, только луна. 7. Любой учитель знает, что самое трудное - ставить оценки. 8. - Что-нибудь случилось? - Ничего. 9. - У вас дома есть цветы? - Да, есть. 10. Слишком поздно. Ничего нельзя сделать. 11. Миша, ты вчера выучил какие-нибудь английские слова? 12. Когда он болен, он ничего не может есть. 13. - В зале есть свободные места? - Есть. 14. Любой девушке хочется выйти замуж. 15. Было что-то странное в этом человеке. 16. Ничто не заставит меня работать по выходным. 17. У меня нет чая. А у тебя есть? 18. Сегодня кто-нибудь звонил? - Никто. 19. Некоторые люди не придерживаются никаких правил. 20. Любой, кто хочет получить приз, должен принять участие в игре. 21. - Хотите салат? - Нет, спасибо. Дайте мне, пожалуйста, немного сока. 22. В этой игре нет ничего трудного.

Ex. 16. Fill in *some, any, no, every* or their derivatives.

1. We don't see ... in the corridor.
2. Please, take ... magazine you like.
3. ... likes to play chess.

4. They didn't get ... letters yesterday.
5. ... likes to be ill.
6. Can I have ... coffee? — Yes, you can have
7. We haven't got ... questions.
8. Can you put ... extra sugar in my tea?
9. ... likes to play this game: it's dull.
10. ... of our pupils study well.
11. Have you met ... in the street? - No, I met
12. They didn't say
13. ... people like big cities.
14. Shall we go ... for the weekend?
15. Can I offer you ... to eat?
16. ... wants to loose a job.
17. Is there ... else you want to tell me?
18. Is there ... on the table? - No, there is
19. I'm sure there is ... in the flat, knock louder.
20. Many young people can't find ... job.

Ex. 17. Fill in the pronouns *other, another, the other* or *others*:

1. They sell two cars. One car costs ten thousands. ... costs eight.
2. This orange is bad. Give me ... one.
3. This apartment is too expensive. ... apartments in the house are less expensive.
4. There are two rooms in this apartment. One of them is small, ... is much larger.
5. About five people from our group went into the city. ... stayed in the country.
6. Show me ... bag, I don't like this one.

Ex. 18. Translate into English:

1. Дай мне другой карандаш. Я сломал этот.
2. Какие-то другие люди пришли и купили этот дом.
3. Покажи мне другую руку.
4. Мы пошли вдоль Пятой Авеню, остальные пошли вдоль Шестой.
5. Один из моих друзей плавает в реке, другой читает книгу.

Ex. 19. Choose the right variant:

1. My father built this birdhouse
a) itself b) themselves c) himself d) myself
2. “What is the title of that song?” – “I’m afraid I don’t remember ...”
a) him b) it c) them d) her
3. Each plan has ... merits.
a) it b) its c) itself d) his
4. This cake is so delicious! Can I have ... slice, please!
a) other b) the other c) another d) others
5. Is there ... I can do for you, madam?
a) something b) anything c) everything d) nothing
6. Please come to see me ... time you are free.
a) some b) any c) every d) no
7. Did you like ... striped trousers in the shop we’ve just passed?
a) this b) that c) those d) these
8. ... did you last see John there?
a) Where b) Which c) When d) Who
9. My brother likes fishing. I sometimes join
a) he b) him c) himself d) his
10. Ben and Ann are good friends of
a) me b) I c) mine d) my

Ex. 20. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Какие разряды английских местоимений вы знаете?
2. Формами каких падежей обладают английские личные местоимения?
3. Какие две формы имеют притяжательные местоимения в английском языке? В чем заключается разница в употреблении этих форм?
4. Какие существительные можно заменить местоимением **it**?
5. Как можно перевести на русский язык возвратные местоимения?
6. Какие вопросительные местоимения вы знаете?
7. Назовите производные от неопределенного местоимения **some**, переведите их на русский язык и объясните, в каких типах предложений их следует употреблять?

8. Выразите эту же мысль, используя неопределённое местоимение **any**: There are **no** students in the room.

9. В каких случаях употребляют указательное местоимение **these**?

10. Переведите предложение на русский язык, объясните употребление местоимения **the other**: I see only five boys here. Where are **the other** ones?

UNIT 4. ИМЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ. НАРЕЧИЕ (ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS)

Имя прилагательное – часть речи, которая описывает предмет или лицо, выражая его качество или свойство. В английском языке, в отличие от русского, имя прилагательное имеет одну и ту же форму для всех лиц единственного и множественного числа и не изменяется по родам и падежам.

E.g. He is a **nice** man.

She is a **nice** woman.

They are **nice** people.

Имя прилагательное в предложении употребляется в функции определения именной части составного сказуемого. В качестве определения имя прилагательное ставится перед существительным, как составная часть именного сказуемого – после глагола-связки:

E.g. She has brought a **red** pencil.

The pencil is **red**.

Наречие – часть речи, указывающая на признак действия или на обстоятельства, при которых протекает действие. Наречие характеризует глагол, описывая где, как, когда и при каких обстоятельствах протекает действие, а также прилагательное или другое наречие, указывая на их признаки.

E.g. He works **hard**.

He works **here**.

He has not worked **hard lately**.

В предложении наречия выполняют синтаксическую функцию обстоятельства.

Большинство наречий образуется от прилагательных путем добавления суффикса –“ly”:

bad (плохой) – badly (плохо)
 slow (медленный) – slowly (медленно)
 careful (тщательный) – carefully (тщательно)
 careless (небрежный) – carelessly (небрежно)

Если прилагательное оканчивается на – “y” с предшествующей согласной, “y” меняется на “i”:

easy – easily, happy – happily

некоторые наречия могут совпадать по форме с прилагательными, но отличаться по значению:

Имя прилагательное	Наречие
He took a fast train to London.	He speaks very fast .
He returned from a long journey.	Have you been waiting long ?
We have very little time.	He reads very little .
We have much time.	He reads very much .
We drew a straight line.	Go straight and then turn left.

Некоторые наречия имеют две формы: одну, совпадающую с прилагательным и другую, оканчивающуюся на –“ly”. При этом наречия отличаются по значению:

Имя прилагательное	Наречие, совпадающее с прилагательным	Наречие, оканчивающееся на –ly
hard усердный He is a hard worker.	hard усердно He works hard .	hardly едва I could hardly understand him.
late поздний He returned in the late autumn.	late поздно He went to bed late last night.	lately в последнее время I haven't seen him lately .
near ближний He is studying the history of the Near East.	near близко He lives quite near .	nearly почти It is nearly five o'clock.

Прилагательному **good** (хороший) соответствует наречие **well** (хорошо).

E.g. He is a **good** student. He studies **well**.

☺ Место наречия в предложении

Наречия неопределенного времени **always, often, seldom, already, usually, sometimes, soon, never** и т.д. ставятся перед глаголом.

E.g. He **never** gets up early.

Если глагол-сказуемое употребляется в сложной форме, наречия неопределенного времени ставятся между вспомогательным и смысловым глаголом

E.g. He will **never** forget it. He has **never** been asked to help her.

Если сказуемое выражено глаголом **to be**, эти наречия ставятся после него.

E.g. He is **never** late for classes.

Наречия времени и места могут стоять как в начале, так и в конце предложения.

E.g. **Tomorrow** they will go to the theatre.

I have seen them **today**.

Прилагательное **enough** стоит перед существительным: I've got **enough** time to do this work.

Наречие **enough** стоит после прилагательного: He is good **enough** for this sort of job.

☺ Порядок употребления прилагательных в английском языке

Если перед существительным нужно использовать несколько прилагательных (желательно, чтобы их было не больше трех), то для того чтобы они звучали естественно, они должны следовать в определенном порядке:

Оценка, мнение	beautiful		
Размер (вес)/Size		big	small
Возраст/Age	old		new
Форма/Shape		round	square
Цвет/Colour			white
Происхождение/Origin	Greek		
Материал/Material	marble	glass	silk
Предназначение		sleeping	
Существительное	statue	vase	scarf

Степени сравнения прилагательных и наречий (Degrees of Comparison)

☺ **Односложные** прилагательные и наречия, а также двусложные прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на “e”, “er”, “ow”, “y” образуют сравнительную степень путем прибавления к положительной степени суффикса – “er”, а превосходную – путем прибавления суффикса –“est”:

deep – deeper – the deepest

Если прилагательное в положительной степени оканчивается на согласную с предшествующим кратким согласным звуком, то при образовании сравнительной и превосходной степеней конечная согласная удваивается:

big – bigger – the biggest

У прилагательного или наречия, оканчивающегося на – “y” с предшествующей согласной, в сравнительной и превосходной степени у заменяется на **i**:

busy – busier – the busiest

☺ Большинство **двусложных**, а также многосложные прилагательные и наречия образуют сравнительную степень при помощи **more / less**, а превосходную – **the most / the least**, которые ставятся перед прилагательным в положительной степени, т.е. имеют сложные формы степеней сравнения:

difficult – more difficult – the most difficult

difficult – less difficult – the least difficult

☺ Некоторые прилагательные и наречия образуют степени сравнения не по правилу:

Положительная степень	Сравнительная степень	Превосходная степень
good, well	better	the best
bad, badly	worse	the worst
little	less	the least
much, many	more	the most

old	older (стареe, более старьй) elder (старше по возрасту, званию и т.п.)	the oldest the eldest
far	farther (о расстоянии) further (о времени)	the farthest the furthest
late	later (позднее) latter (последний из двух названных)	the later the latest

E.g. He is one of my **oldest** friends.

My **elder** brother is a doctor.

There was a **further** delay in the delivery of goods.

I found him in the **farthest** corner of the room.

I have **less** time than he.

I have **more** friends than my brother.

This dictionary is **better**.

He studies **worse** and **worse**.

☺ После прилагательных в сравнительной степени употребляется союз “**than**” соответствующий русскому союзу чем:

E.g. This book is more interesting **than** that one.

Для усиления сравнительной степени употребляется слово “**much**” в значении *намного, гораздо*:

E.g. This book is **much more** interesting than that one.

☺ При сравнении предметов одинакового качества прилагательное в положительной степени употребляется с союзом “**as ... as**” со значением такой же ... как, так же ... как. В отрицательных предложениях первое “**as**” часто заменяется на “**so**”:

E.g. This book is **as** interesting **as** that one.

This book is **not as** (so) interesting **as** that one.

☺ Русскому сравнительному обороту **чем ... тем** в английском языке соответствует сравнительная конструкция **the ... the**

The sooner you finish the work, **the** better for you.

The more you learn, **the** less you remember.

The longer I looked at that picture, **the** more I liked it.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct word.

1. Why are you **angry/angrily**? I haven't done anything wrong.
2. Our teacher always explains the rules **clear/clearly**.
3. Have you seen your friend **recent/recently**?
4. He always does his homework **good/well**.
5. She left too **late/lately** to catch the bus.
6. Oleg speaks English **perfect/perfectly**.
7. She speaks **perfect /perfectly** English.
8. These jeans are **expensive/expensively**.
9. We visit our relatives **regular/regularly**.
10. She is a **slow/slowly** runner.

Ex. 2. Use the following adjectives in the comparative and superlative degree forms.

Example: cold – colder – the coldest

thin, long, comfortable, funny, good, beautiful, pretty, pleasant, bad, wide, difficult, happy, much, hardworking, lazy, old, young, important, simple, little.

Ex. 3. Answer the questions:

1. Which light is brighter: the Moon's or the Sun's?
2. Which month is the shortest in the year?
3. Which month of the year is the hottest, and which is the coldest?
4. Which season is the warmest of all?
5. Is March as warm as June?
6. Is a lion smaller than a cat?
7. Which is the biggest animal?
8. Is the Thames as wide as the Volga?
9. What country is the largest in the world?
10. Is Russian as popular as English?

Ex. 4. Open the brackets and use the comparative degree form of the adjectives and adverbs.

1. This exercise is (simple) than that one. 2. Why are you talking? Please be (quiet). 3. New districts of Moscow are (beautiful) than the old ones. 4. He is (clever) than his brother. 5. My (old) sister is 4 years (old) than me. 6. There are (many) customers on Saturdays than on weekdays. 7. Are expensive things (good) than cheap ones? 8. Is English grammar (difficult) than Russian grammar? 9. Today he has made (few) mistakes than yesterday. 10. She had to give us (far) information though she didn't want to.

Ex. 5. Open the brackets and use the superlative degree form of the adjectives and adverbs.

1. The Pan-American Highway is (long) road in the world. 2. The Beatles were (successful) pop group. 3. Japan has (crowded) railways in the world. 4. This is our (old) national airline. 5. Is English (useful) language to learn? 6. The Queen must be (rich) woman in the world. 7. Unfortunately, I haven't heard (late) news. I think it was very interesting. 8. Is the "Mona Lisa" (valuable) painting in the world? 9. His house is (far) in the street. 10. February is (snowy) and (cold) month of the year here.

Ex. 6. Open the brackets and use the adjectives and adverbs in the positive, the comparative or the superlative degree form.

1. How are you today? – Thank you, I am (well).
2. The (near) the summer, the (warm) the days.
3. At the end of winter the sun begins to shine as (brightly) as in spring.
4. Which day of the year is the (long) one?
5. My daughter skates (well) than yours.
6. My room is not so (light) as your room.
7. Nick is the (bad) sportsman in our group.
8. The (much) I sleep the (little) I work.
9. Your son is (young) than mine.
10. This article is the (difficult) for me.

Ex. 7. Put the words in the right order

Example: always, wake up, I, early

I **always** wake up early.

1. by air, I, really, travelling, hate
2. to work, she, ran, quickly
3. every afternoon, sleeps, my dog, in the garden, peacefully
4. they, in the kitchen, quietly, were talking
5. all morning, happily, he, played, in his room
6. they, the street, carefully, crossed
7. yesterday, by taxi, I, went, to work
8. in winter, they, never, go, to the beach
9. sometimes, takes, he, to the park, his children
10. never, he, visited, has, Paris

Ex. 8. Read and translate the joke.

The more we study, the more we know.

The more we know, the more we forget.

The more we forget, the less we know.

The less we know, the less we forget.

The less we forget, the more we know.

So, why study?

Ex. 9. Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Чем ближе зима, тем короче дни.
2. Чем больше мы читаем, тем больше знаем.
3. Чем раньше вы придете, тем лучше.
4. Чем длиннее дни, тем ближе весна.
5. Чем больше я читаю эту книгу, тем больше она мне нравится.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 10. Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct word.

1. In spite of the coming danger he remained (calm/ calmly).
2. Though the dish smelt (good/well), he refused to eat saying he was not hungry.
3. She spends a lot of money on her clothes but they always look (cheap/cheaply).

4. Have you seen him? – Yes, he looks (good/well) but he says he feels (bad/badly).
5. His cough sounds (awful/awfully). He should see a doctor.
6. Be (quiet/quietly). Stop talking, behave yourselves.
7. The situation looks (bad/badly). We must do something.
8. He seemed to me a bit (strange/strangely) today.
9. The fish tastes (awful/awfully). I won't eat it.
10. He looked (good/well) in his new suit.

Ex. 11. Use the adjectives in brackets in the comparative or superlative degree form:

A lot of people travel nowadays. It's not surprising because distances between countries are becoming (short) due to the development of transport. The main kinds of public transport are buses, trains, ships and airplanes. Each of them has its pros and cons.

Of course, air travel is (fast) than other means of transport. However, flying often involves delays and cancellations. You often spend (much) time getting to and from the airport than actually flying. Besides, air travel is the (expensive) kind of modern transport. It could be said that flying is (efficient) than other means of public transport if you have to visit another country or continent. In other cases, it is (practical) to go by train.

Travelling by train is one of the (popular) means of travelling. First of all, it's (cheap) than travelling by air. Besides, modern trains are (comfortable) than in the past.

Many people are sure that the (good) way of travelling is travelling by ship, which is very exciting. If the weather is fine, you can relax on the large sun deck and enjoy the panoramic view of the sea.

Ex. 12. Complete the sentences using the constructions *as ... as* or *not so ... as/not as ... as*. Choose the one from the box.

high	beautiful	tall	fast	big
poor	important	crowded	expensive	lazy

1. I know that your job is important, but my job is important too. My job is
2. The bicycle is fast, but the car is faster. The bicycle is
3. Her knowledge is poor, but he knows a bit more. His knowledge is
4. He is lazy, but his brother is lazy too. He is
5. Their furniture costs \$700, and ours is \$870. Their furniture is
6. France is big. Belgium is not a big country. Belgium is
7. Her wages are \$200 a week, and mine are \$150. My wages are
8. She is beautiful, but I like her sister better. I think, she is
9. He is tall, but I am taller. He is
10. Tverskaya and Arbat are crowded streets. Tverskaya street is

Ex. 13. Translate into English:

1. Это самый прекрасный памятник в Москве.
2. Путешествовать на машине намного интереснее, чем на поезде.
3. Это самый смешной фильм, который я когда-либо смотрел.
4. Джон на 10 лет старше своей жены.
5. Тебе не кажется, что все меньше и меньше людей ходят в театры?
6. Это самая вкусная еда, которую я когда-либо ел.
7. Я думаю, что весна самое приятное время года.
8. Библиотека Британского музея — самая богатая библиотека в Великобритании.
9. Эти часы немного дороже, чем те, но они намного лучше.
10. Наш отель был намного ближе к станции метро, чем мы ожидали.

Ex. 14. Translate into English:

1. Чем скорее вы придете, тем лучше.
2. Чем дольше мы живем, тем больше мы узнаем.
3. Чем меньше мы едим, тем лучше мы себя чувствуем.
4. Чем больше я думаю об этом, тем яснее я понимаю причину всего этого.
5. Чем ближе весна, тем теплее дни.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 15. Choose the appropriate adverb.

1. He lives quite (nearly/near). 2. You've come too (lately/late). 3. The mechanic examined the damaged car (closely/close). 4. It is (prettily/pretty) difficult to speak to her. 5. We have seen very little of you (lately/late). 6. She is always dressed (prettily/pretty). 7. I used to work (hardly/hard) to get everything I have got now. 8. Her house stood (closely/close) to the river. 9. The wind was blowing so (hardly/hard) that I could (hardly/hard) walk. 10. The plane flew (highly/high), we could (hardly/hard) see it. 11. (Shortly/Short) after graduating I moved to the capital. 12. I could see the house door which was (widely/wide) open.

Ex. 16. Put the following into the correct order.

- 1) Italian / new / red / soft / shoes
- 2) elderly / tall / Englishman
- 3) oval / Venetian / ancient / valuable / glass
- 4) shiny / large / expensive / brown / leather / case
- 5) square / wooden / old / nice / table
- 6) modern / stone / large / beautiful / cottage
- 7) porcelain / tea / blue / thin / old / cup
- 8) young / blonde / handsome / tall / man
- 9) old / several / English / beautiful / castles
- 10) pretty / French / young / a lot of / girls
- 11) dark blue / best / silk / my / shirt
- 12) young / many / factory / German / workers

Ex. 17. Use “enough” as an adjective or an adverb with the bold typed words in the following sentences:

1. Jack has got **friends** in other countries.
2. It is **difficult** to live in Russia.
3. We have got **time** to get ready for the classes.
4. I've got **beer** for a company of ten people.
5. They have **vegetables** to make a large bowl of salad.
6. The book is **interesting**.

7. It's **warm** in the room to take off the coat.
8. They have **oranges** for the whole family.

Ex. 18. Fill in the right word.

a) old – older – elder

1. Is Nick ... than Mike?
2. Which is the ... brother of the two?
3. I have seen your younger daughter, but I haven't seen your ... daughter.
4. The boy always did what his ... friend told him to do.
5. The younger man was helping the ... one to get off the bus.

b) old – eldest – oldest

1. We have three sons. John is the youngest and Peter is the ... son.
2. Mr. Brown is my ... friend.
3. Where does your ... sister work?
4. A group of boys was playing in the yard. The ... boy was not more than thirteen.
5. The wind was so strong that it broke down even the bigger and the ... trees in the park.

c) far – farther – further – farthest

1. Let's not go It is getting dark.
2. The boys liked to play in the ... corner of the park.
3. Ring me up as soon as you get ... information.
4. We found our puppy at the ... corner of the street.
5. Let us wait for ... instructions.

d) late – later – latest – last

1. Don't run! Let's wait for a ... bus.
2. This was Byron's ... poem
3. I have received the ... number of this magazine.
4. She likes to dress in the ... fashion.
5. At the concert the poet will recite his ... poems.
6. This train is the If we miss it, we won't get to London tonight.
7. You are my ... hope.

Ex. 19. Translate into English:

1. Вчера я встал позже, чем обычно.
2. Мой отец самый старший в семье, а сестра самая младшая.
3. Какой язык труднее: немецкий или английский?
4. Нынешнее лето – самое сухое.
5. Она такая же красивая, как ее мать.
6. Эта самая интересная книга в его коллекции.
7. Этот рассказ не такой захватывающий, как тот.
8. Вокзал дальше отсюда, чем аэропорт.
9. Чем раньше мы приедем на станцию, тем лучше.
10. У меня меньше книг, чем у вас.
11. 22 декабря – самый короткий день в

году. 12. Московское метро – лучшее в мире. 13. Мой старший брат на пять лет старше меня. 14. Какая страна самая маленькая в мире? 15. У Алисы меньше денег, чем у Тома.

Ex. 20. Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form:

Lots of people travel to New York because it is the (large) city in the US. Perhaps, with all its suburbs, it is the (big) city in the world. Moreover, it is one of the (important) industrial cities in the country. Another reason for travelling is its sights. Some of the (old) historic buildings are situated there. Some of the buildings in New York City are (high) buildings in the whole world.

Now New York includes five boroughs: Manhattan, the Bronx, Queens, Brooklyn and Richmond. Manhattan is the (small) in size but it is the heart and source of American policy. Perhaps, (expensive) office buildings in the world are there.

The Bronx is a (residential) than industrial part of the city. Queens is both a residential and industrial area. New York's two (big) airports of all are both there. Brooklyn has (many) people than any other part of the city – about 3000000. It is mostly a district of middle class people.

New York has the (great) number of factories, the (large) banks and post offices. It sends out many letters and receives the (heavy) mail bags. It is truly the (famous) business city.

New York is also called the cultural capital of the USA. There are a lot of museums in New York. One of the (good) known is the Metropolitan Museum of Art. All in all, there are so many things to see in New York that it's impossible to be bored there.

Ex. 21. Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form:

Chinese vase

When I was a child I often went to see my grandmother. I thought her house was as (beautiful) as a palace and the garden seemed (big) than a park. As I grew (old) the house and the garden seemed (small) but I still loved visiting the old lady who was (wise) and (intelligent) than many other people. She was (kind) person in the world. Sometimes I played with the doll's house which was (old) than grandmother herself; at other times I

looked at books which were (interesting) and (beautiful) than my children's books at home. But most of all I liked a (big) Chinese vase. It was (tall) than me, and I could not see inside it. Before she died, my grandmother had given me the vase I loved so much. But my two sons didn't like it. They liked football (well) than the vase and were (naughty) of all children. One day I came home from the shops. Paul and Philip met me at the door; Paul had a ball in his hands. «I'm as (strong) as George Best, Mummy,” he said. “I'm (good) football player. I got a goal and broke the vase”. Philip was (diplomatic) than Paul. «It doesn't really matter, does it? You told us it wasn't (new)”.

Ex. 22. Choose the right variant:

1. Joanna sings
a) awful b) awfully c) most awful d) most awfully
2. Karen is the best student in class. She studies
a) hard b) hardly c) more hard d) more hardly
3. Tom looks ... than he is.
a) old b) older c) elder d) the oldest
4. Jill can run ... than Jack.
a) fast b) more fast c) faster d) more faster
5. This is ... room in the whole house.
a) attractive b) more attractive c) the most attractive d) such attractive
6. What is the ... news?
a) late b) later c) latest d) latter
7. This cartoon is as ... as that one.
a) funny b) funnier c) more funny d) the funniest
8. The meal cost ... than I expected.
a) little b) least c) less d) smaller
9. What time shall we leave? – The ..., the
a) soon, well b) sooner, better c) sooner, good d) sooner, best
10. ... member of his family is his Granny.
a) old b) the elder c) the eldest d) the oldest

Ex. 23. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Чем отличается английское имя прилагательное от русского имени прилагательного?
2. Какие синтаксические функции в предложении выполняет имя прилагательное и наречие?
3. Назовите основные способы образования наречий в английском языке.
4. Какое место в предложении занимают наречия неопределенного времени?
5. “Enough” – это имя прилагательное или наречие?
6. В какой последовательности следует употреблять английские прилагательные в предложении, если их много?
7. Как образуют степени сравнения большинство односложных прилагательных и наречий?
8. Какие изменения в правописании имеют английские прилагательные и наречия при образовании степеней сравнения?
9. Какие прилагательные и наречия образуют степени сравнения нестандартно?
10. Какие сравнительные конструкции и союзы вы знаете?

**UNIT 5. ИМЯ ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ
(THE NUMERAL)**

1. Числительное – это часть речи, которая обозначает количество или порядок предметов.

Имена числительные делятся на количественные и порядковые. Количественные числительные обозначают количество предметов и отвечают на вопрос «Сколько?» «How many? How much?». Порядковые числительные обозначают порядок предметов и отвечают на вопрос «Который?» «Which?»

2. В предложении числительное может быть:

1) Подлежащим

E.g. Three students are absent from the lecture.

2) Дополнением

E.g. I took three books from the library.

3) Определением

E.g. The second lesson begins at eleven o'clock.

4) Именной частью составного сказуемого

E.g. Five times five is twenty-five.

Количественные числительные

1-12	13-19	20-90	100 и далее
1 one	13 thirteen	20 twenty	100 a (one) hundred
2 two	14 fourteen	21 twenty-one	105 a (one) hundred and five
3 three	15 fifteen	22 twenty-two	300 three hundred
4 four	16 sixteen		420 four hundred and twenty
5 five	17 seventeen	30 thirty	1000 a (one) thousand
6 six	18 eighteen	40 forty	1005 a (one) thousand and five
7 seven	19 nineteen	50 fifty	1250 a (one) thousand two hundred
8 eight		60 sixty	and fifty
9 nine		70 seventy	4000 four thousand
10 ten		80 eighty	50 000 fifty thousand
11 eleven		90 ninety	100 000 a (one) hundred thousand
12 twelve			1 000 000 a (one) million
			1 000 000 000 a (one) milliard (in the UK), a (one) billion (in the USA)

1. Числительные с 13 до 19 образуются от соответствующих числительных первого десятка при помощи суффикса – **“teen”**: fourteen, sixteen.

Числительные 3 и 5 изменяются: three - thirteen, five – fifteen.

Числительные, оканчивающиеся на – **“teen”** имеют ударение на первом и втором слоге: fourteen

Когда числительное определяет существительное, они имеют ударение на первом слоге: fifteen books.

2. Числительные, обозначающие десятки, образуются от соответствующих числительных первого десятка при помощи суффикса – **“ty”**: six – sixty, seven – seventy.

Числительные two, three, four, five видоизменяются: two – twenty, three – thirty, four – forty, five – fifty.

Числительные, обозначающие десятки, имеют ударение на первом слоге: forty

3. Между десятками и следующими за ними единицами ставится дефис (черточка): twenty- one, fifty-six

4. Перед числительными hundred, thousand, million ставится неопределенный артикль «a» или числительное «one»: a (one) hundred, a (one) thousand, a (one) million.

Эти числительные не принимают окончания -s, когда перед ними стоит числительное two, three, four.

Однако, эти числительные могут принимать окончание -s, когда они выражают определенное количество сотен, тысяч, миллионов. В этом случае они превращаются в существительные и после них употребляется существительное с предлогом «of»:

E.g. Thousands of people were present at the meeting.

5. При обозначении количественных числительных при помощи цифр, каждые три разряда (справа налево) определяются запятой: 3,734; 2,720,538

6. При телефонных вызовах в Англии каждая цифра номера телефона называется отдельно: 1335 – one two three five. Цифра 0 читается как [ou]

Когда первые две или последние две цифры номера телефона одинаковые, употребляется слово «double»

6634 – double six three four

3466 – three four double six

Когда средние две цифры одинаковы слово «double» не употребляется:

3446 three four four six

Номера 1000, 2000, 3000 и т.д. читаются one thousand, two thousand, three thousand и т.д.

Порядковые числительные

1й – 12й	13й – 19й	20й – 90й	100й и далее
1 st first	13 th thirteenth	20 th twentieth	100 th hundredth
2 nd second	14 th fourteenth	30 th thirtieth	101 st hundred and first
3 rd third	15 th fifteenth	40 th fortieth	200 th two hundredth
4 th fourth	16 th sixteenth	50 th fiftieth	1000 th thousandth
5 th fifth	17 seventeenth	60 th sixtieth	1002 thousand and second
6 th sixth	18 th eighteenth	70 th seventieth	
7 th seventh	19 th nineteenth	80 th eightieth	
8 th eighth		90 th ninetieth	
9 th ninth		91 st ninety-first и	
10 th tenth		т.д.	
11 th eleventh			
12 th twelfth			

1. Существительное, определяемое порядковым числительным, употребляется с определенным артиклем. Артикль перед порядковым числительным сохраняется, если существительное не упомянуто:

E.g. February is the second month of the year.

The second composition is better than the first.

Перед порядковым числительным может употребляться и неопределенный артикль. В этом случае числительное приобретает значение «другой», «еще один»:

E.g. We have sent them a second telegram.

2. При обозначении номеров глав, страниц, параграфов, частей книг, актов пьес и т.д. порядковые числительные часто заменяются количественными числительными, следующими за существительными, к которым они относятся:

E.g. the first part - part one

the fifth chapter - chapter five

the twenty-first page - page twenty-one

Количественные числительные употребляются также при обозначении номеров домов, комнат, автобусов, трамваев, размеров

обуви и предметов одежды. Существительные в этих случаях употребляются без артикля:

E.g. I usually take tram № 5. (читается «number five»)

He wears size forty shoes.

3. Хронологические даты обозначаются количественными числительными.

E.g. 1900 – nineteen hundred

1904 – nineteen four (nineteen hundred and four)

1915 – nineteen fifteen (nineteen hundred and fifteen)

1949 nineteen forty-nine (nineteen hundred and forty-nine)

Даты обозначаются порядковыми числительными:

E.g. 15th May, 1948 – the fifteenth of May nineteen forty-eight

4. Дробные числительные

В простых дробях числительное выражается количественным числительным, а знаменатель – порядковым.

E.g. $1/3 =$ one third

$1/5 =$ one fifth

Однако, $1/2 =$ one half, $1/4 =$ one quarter

Когда числитель больше единицы, знаменатель принимает окончание -s

E.g. $2/3 =$ two thirds

$3/5 =$ three fifths

Существительное, следующее за дробью, стоит в единственном числе:

E.g. $2/3$ apple (two thirds of an apple)

$3/4$ kilometre (three quarter of a kilometre)

$1/2$ page (half of a page)

Существительное, к которому относится смешанное число употребляется во множественном числе:

E.g. $2 \frac{1}{2}$ tons (two and a half tons = two tons and a half)

При чтении смешанного числа целое число, которое равно единице, употребляется во множественном числе, когда оно читается после смешанного числа, когда же существительное читается между единицей и дробью, оно употребляется в единственном числе:

E.g. 1 ½ hours (one and a half hours = an (one) hour and a half)

1 1/3 pounds (one and a third pounds = one pound and a third)

5. В десятичных дробях целое число отделяется от дроби точкой. При чтении десятичных дробей каждая цифра читается отдельно. Точка, отделяющая целое число, читается как «point». Нуль читается как «nought».

E.g. 0,25 = nought point two five (point two five)

Существительное, следующее за десятичной дробью стоит в единственном числе, когда целое равно нулю:

E.g. 0,25 ton (nought point two five of a ton)

В других случаях существительные стоят во множественном числе:

E.g. 1,25 tons (one point two five tons)

23.76 tons (two three point seven six tons = twenty three point seventy six tons)

6. Проценты обозначаются следующим образом:

2% = 2 per cent = 2 p.c. (two per cent)

Дробные доли процента читаются следующим образом:

3/8% = 3/8 per cent = 3/8 p.c. (three eighth per cent = three eighth of one per cent)

½ % = ½ per cent = ½ p.c. (a half per cent = a half of one per cent)

0,2% = 0,2 per cent = 0,2 p.c. (nought point two per cent = nought point two of one per cent)

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Read in English the following numbers:

1, 11, 10, 2, 12, 20, 3, 13, 30, 4, 14, 40, 5, 15, 50, 6, 16, 60, 7, 17, 70, 8, 18, 80, 9, 19, 90, 100, 134, 245, 306, 403, 298, 355, 948, 3625, 6074, 8279, 1005, 2625, 5427, 9011, 193 351, 7 506 017, 1/3, 1/6, 1/8, ½, ¼, 4/5, 6/9, 5/4, 0.125, 1.35, 24.705, 4.378, 12.489, 0.01.

Ex. 2. Write down the following numbers with words:

104, 151, 189, 1017, 2568, 1141, 5982, 10788, 44, 3, 89, 76, 99.

Ex. 3. Read the following dates:

15.11.1893; 22.04.1844; 27.03.1987; 17.07.1327; 18.01.1921;
12.10.1043; 16.08.1906; 21.05.1632.

Ex. 4. Read the following telephone numbers:

213-66-01; 421-57-83; 221-00-74; 89042565612; 89602738855.

Ex. 5. Write in English the following numerals:

exercise 5; page 312; bus 102; room 203; text 6; tram 17; lecture room
9; chapter 12; box 481.

Ex. 6. Write down the following numbers with words:

3, 11, 20, 13, 16, 35, 49, 58, 61, 79, 85, 97, 100.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 7. Write down in English the following numbers:

6, 38, 73, 99, 101, 152, 1045, 6671, 9854, 87, 432, 80400, 329645,
13614200.

Ex. 8. Write down the following dates:

1.06.1905; 9.09.1945; 2.07.1800; 4.02.1995; 3.10.1101; 30.05.1445;
30.03.2000.

Ex. 9. Write in English:

$\frac{1}{2}$; $\frac{2}{4}$; $\frac{3}{8}$; $2\frac{1}{4}$; $3\frac{2}{5}$; 0.25; 1.34; 0.044

Ex. 10. Write in English:

$\frac{3}{5}$ тонны; $\frac{1}{4}$ километра; $\frac{2}{3}$ процента; $1\frac{1}{2}$ часа; $2\frac{2}{3}$ дюйма;
0.105 метра; 2.18 фунта; 5 процентов; 23 процента; 2.5 процента.

Ex. 11. Make ordinal numerals:

one, two, three, six, eighteen, twenty-four, seventy-one, one hundred, two hundred and seven, two thousand, twenty-three.

Ex. 12. Say it in English:

Model: $2+6=8$ two and (plus) six is eight.

$5-3=2$ five minus three is two.

plus +, minus - .

$25+5=$	$12+4=$	$25+5=$	$13-1=$
$39-4=$	$83+12=$	$66-7=$	$95-9=$
$48+3=$	$37-7=$	$84-17=$	$71+3=$
$21+35=$	$46-15=$	$99+1=$	$27-14=$

Ex. 13. Fill in the blanks:

1. The academic year begins on
2. There are ... days in a year.
3. There are ... or ... days in a month.
4. There are ... in a week.
5. There are ... months in a year.
6. The first day of the year is
7. There are ... days in June.
8. There are ... seasons in a year.
9. My birthday is on
10. The ... of December is the last day of a year.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 14. Translate into English:

пятьдесят килограммов; триста автомобилей; шестьдесят один вагон; два миллиона тонн; сотни ящиков; тысячи книг; сотни лет; три тысячи рублей; комната номер 5; автобус номер 202

Ex. 15. Translate into English:

12 января 1946 года; 31 марта 1205 года; 22 сентября 1614 года; 31 декабря 1758 года; 8 августа 1933 года; 7 июля 2001 года; 13 февраля 1980 года; 29 октября 1832 года

Ex. 16. Translate into English:

1. В этой школе 700 учеников.
2. Тысячи людей пришли на митинг.
3. На этом заводе работает 2000 рабочих.
4. Эту программу смотрели миллионы зрителей.
5. Ты можешь позвонить мне по телефону 246-00-17 с десяти до пяти.
6. Платье стоит 245 рублей.
7. Берта родилась 23 сентября 1975 года.
8. Группа выезжает в Египет 24 июля 1987 года, а вернется 10 августа 1987 года.
9. Премьер-министр Великобритании живет по адресу: Даунинг-Стрит, дом 10.
10. Лекция по истории состоится в 11 аудитории.
11. Откройте книги на странице 45!
12. Этот пример можно найти на 17й странице.
13. Студенты уже сделали 2/3 контрольной работы.
14. Она получает сотни писем каждый день.
15. 31 декабря - последний день года, а 1 января – первый день.

Ex. 17. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

- 1) Что такое имя числительное?
- 2) На какие разряды делятся имена числительные?
- 3) Что обозначают количественные числительные?
- 4) Что обозначают порядковые числительные?
- 5) Какие функции в предложении выполняют числительные?
- 6) Как образуются количественные числительные от 13 до 19?
- 7) Как образуются числительные, обозначающие десятки?
- 8) Как образуются числительные, обозначающие десятки и единицы?
- 9) Как изменяется написание количественных числительных **two, three, four, five** при образовании числительных, обозначающих десятки?
- 10) Что вы знаете о числительных **hundred, thousand, million**?
- 11) Как читаются номера телефонов в Великобритании?

- 12) Как образуются порядковые числительные?
- 13) Какие артикли употребляются с порядковыми числительными?
- 14) Как обозначаются номера глав, страниц, параграфов, частей книг, актов, пьес, домов, автобусов, трамваев, размеров обуви и предметов одежды?
- 15) Как обозначаются хронологические даты?
- 16) Как образуются и читаются дробные числительные?
- 17) Как обозначаются проценты?

**UNIT 6. ГЛАГОЛЫ "TO BE, "TO HAVE ",
ОБОРОТЫ "THERE IS" / "THERE ARE"
(VERBS "TO BE", "TO HAVE", "THERE IS/ARE
CONSTRUCTIONS")**

ГЛАГОЛ "TO BE" (THE VERB "TO BE")

Глагол **"to be"** "быть, находиться", в настоящем времени имеет следующие формы

I am		We are
You are		You are
He	} is	They are
She		
It		

Употребление

1) Как самостоятельный глагол употребляется для обозначения возраста людей, размеров предметов, цены товаров, времени, погоды; характеристики людей и т.д.

E.g. - How old are you? - I am thirty years old.

E.g. - How deep is the river? - It is 25 meters.

E.g. - How much is this melon? - It is 40 rubles.

E.g. - What is the time? - It is five o'clock.

E.g. - What's the weather like? - It's sunny.

E.g. I am hungry.

2) Как вспомогательный глагол "to be" используется для образования длительных времен и пассивного залога.

E.g. He is working now.

E.g. This poem is written by a modern poet.

3) Сочетание глагола "to be" с инфинитивом обозначает будущее действие, которое произойдёт в силу договоренности, плана и т.п.

E.g. He is to make a report at the conference.

4) Сочетание to be + about + инфинитив обозначает, что действие, выраженное инфинитивом, готово начаться в ближайшем будущем.

E.g. We are about to begin our tests.

В вопросительной форме глагол "to be" ставится перед подлежащим. В отрицательной форме имеет после себя частицу "not".

E.g. He is in the canteen now.

Is he in the canteen now?

He is not in the canteen now.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex.1. Use "to be" in the Present Simple.

1. You ... welcome.
2. Mary and Nelly ... friends.
3. She ... out
4. It ... 5 o'clock now.
5. They ... glad to see you.
6. The metro station ... far from my house.
7. How ... you?
8. How far ... it from here?
9. It ... a rainy day.
10. Her baby ... in bed.

Ex.2. Read and translate the following sentences.

1. What are you? I am a student. I am young. I am well. I am not in the Institute now.

2. What is your friend? My friend is a student too, but he is not well. He is ill. He is at home now.

3. What is your mother? My mother is an economist. She is at the office.

4. We are students. We are at the Institute now. We are in class. Ten students are present. Two students are absent.

5. These are young workers. They are our friends. They are at the factory.

6. Where is your friend? – He is at home. He is ill.

7. Where are the workers? – They are at the factory.

8. How is your mother? – Thank you, she is quite well.

9. Is your friend well? – No, he is not.

10. How is your family? – Thanks, they are fine.

Ex.3. Complete the following sentences.

1. Helen is not in class. She ...

2. My mother is not old. . She ...

3. My friend is not ill. He ...

4. The workers are not at home. They ...

5. Tom is not absent. He ...

6. How are you? –Thank you. I ...

7. How is your brother? –Thank you, he ...

8. Sorry, but my friend is absent today. He ...

9. He is at home now... He...

10. How are your children? – Thank you, they ... – I ... glad to hear it.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Put in “am”, “is”, “are”.

1. The weather ... very nice today.

2. I ... tired.

3. These cases... very heavy.

4. The dog ... asleep.

5. I ... hot. Can you open the window, please?

6. This castle... one thousand years old.

7. My brother and I ... good tennis players.
8. Ann ... at home, but her children ... at school.
9. I ... a student. My sister ... an architect.
10. She ... not at home.

Ex. 5. Write full sentences. Use am/is/are.

Model : (My shoes very dirty). My shoes are very dirty.

1. (his room very clean).
2. (my bed very comfortable).
3. (your matches in your bag).
4. (I not very happy today).
5. (this café very expensive).
6. (her daughter six years old).
7. (the houses in this street very old).
8. (the examinations not difficult).
9. (those flowers very beautiful).
10. (the trees yellow in autumn).

Ex. 6. Write positive and negative sentences. Use am/am not, is/ isn't, are/aren't.

Model : (Paris the capital of France). Paris is the capital of France.

(I/interested in football). I am not interested in football.

1. (I/hungry). I...
2. (He/thirsty). He...
3. (It/warm today). It...
4. (Rome/in Spain). Rome...
5. (I/afraid of dogs). I...
6. (My hands/cold). My hands...
7. (Canada/very big country). Canada...
8. (the Amazon/in Africa). The Amazon...
9. (diamonds/cheap). Diamonds...
10. (cats/big animals). Cats...

Ex. 7. Translate into English.

1. Они студенты. Они в институте сейчас.
2. Мои друзья молодые художники.

3. Книги на полке. Тетради на столе.
4. Ее отец инженер. Он сейчас на заводе.
5. Мы в институте, а не дома.
6. Откуда Вы?
7. Сегодня дождливый день.
8. Как Вы? – Спасибо, хорошо.
9. Она дома, а ее брат в школе.
10. Эти цветы розовые.

Основные типы вопросов с глаголом "to be" в Present Simple.

1. **Общий вопрос**– это вопрос ко всему предложению.

E.g. They are in the garden now.

Are they in the garden now?

They are not in the garden now?

2. **Специальный вопрос**– это вопрос к одному из членов предложения. Специальный вопрос начинается с вопросительного слова: “what”, “which”, “who”, “when”, “where”, “whose”, “why”, “how”, “how many/how much”:

E.g. Where are they now?

When are they in the garden?

3. **Альтернативный вопрос**– это тот же общий вопрос, в котором представлено значение выбора.

E.g. Are they in the garden or at home now?

В английском предложении присутствует частица “or” (или).

4. **Разделительный вопрос**. Это вопрос типа «не так ли?», «не правда ли?». Разделительный вопрос состоит из двух частей. Если первая часть утвердительная, вторая отрицательная.

E.g. They are in the garden now, are not (aren't) they?

Если первая часть предложения отрицательная, то вторая утвердительная.

E.g. They are not in the garden now, are they?

Основные типы вопросов с глаголом "to be" в Past Simple и Future Simple.

„to be“ в Past Simple – “was”, “were”.

„to be“ во Future Simple– “will be”.

1. They were at the University yesterday.
Were they at the University yesterday?
They were not (weren't) at the University yesterday.
Where were they yesterday?
When were they at the University?
Were they at the University or at school yesterday?
They were at the University yesterday, were not (weren't) they?
They were not at the University yesterday, were they?

2. They will be at home tomorrow.
Will they be at home tomorrow?
They won't be at home tomorrow.
When will they be at home?
Where will they be tomorrow?
Will they be at home or at work tomorrow?
They will be at home, will not (won't) they?
They will not be at home, will they?

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 8. Make up main types of questions with the verb "to be".

1. It is rather dark in the room.
2. She was ill last year.
3. They will arrive in the evening.
4. She was very nice in her new dress.
5. Her gloves are on the table.
6. He will do the work next week.

Ex. 9. Fill in the blanks with the verb "to be" in Present, Past or Future Simple.

1. You ... welcome.
2. Mary and Nelly ... friends two years ago.
3. She ... in the country next summer.
4. How old ... Mary.
5. He ... six two years ago.

6. They ... to Canada in three weeks.
7. Sally ... a nice, clever girl.
8. Bob ... at the lecture tomorrow.
9. How ... you?
10. Nick ... in bed yesterday. He ... ill.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 10. Make up main types of questions with the verb "to be".

1. It is cold in the classroom.
2. He will be at work tomorrow.
3. She was sixteen three years ago.
4. They were at the party yesterday.
5. She will be a teacher in two years.
6. This room is very big and light.

Ex. 11. Say, if the verb "to be" is notional, modal or auxiliary.

1. There are a lot of things to do.
2. It is six o'clock. He is at home at this time.
3. She is too young to understand it.
4. The whole country is going to strike.
5. He is taking his English exam tomorrow.
6. The football match will be shown on TV.
7. The door was open.
8. She is to return on Sunday.
9. It was a nasty day. It was raining cats and dogs.
10. Sunday is my day off.
11. I was surprised that there was so little traffic in the streets.
12. Sentence 5 is on page 15.

Ex. 12. Translate into English.

1. Мне восемнадцать лет.
2. Мамы нет дома. Она на работе.
3. Холодно. У меня холодные руки.
4. Студенты в аудитории. У них сейчас лекция.

5. – Катя дома? – Да, она занята.
6. Завтра они будут в Москве.
7. Вчера в 7 часов они были дома?
8. – Где он был в прошлую субботу? – Он был в театре.
9. Брайан был здесь минуту назад.
10. Джон сейчас на Средиземном море.
11. Обед готов. Тарелки, ложки, вилки и стаканы на столе.
12. – Я никогда не опаздываю. – Да? – Сейчас без четверти десять.
13. Скажи ей, что Мэри больна.
14. Летом здесь очень жарко.
15. – Вы хотите есть? – Нет, я хочу пить.

ГЛАГОЛ "TO HAVE " (VERB "TO HAVE ")

Глагол "to have " (иметь, владеть) в настоящем времени (Present Simple) имеет следующие формы.

I have We have

You have You have

She	}	has	They have
He			
It			

Как смысловой глагол "to have " имеет значение «иметь», «владеть», «обладать».

В британском варианте в устной речи употребляется выражение "have got", имеющее то же самое значение.

E.g. I have (have got) a dog.

He's got a headache.

She has a lot of English books.

Как вспомогательный глагол "to have" употребляется для образования совершенных и совершенно -длительных времён.

E.g. He has already done this work. They have been translating the article for two hours.

В научно-технической литературе "have" часто обозначает свойства, качества, детали механизмов и т.д.

E.g. Triangles have three sides.

How many faces does a cube have?

☺ Глагол "to have" употребляется в следующих словосочетаниях:

to have a lesson / a lecture / a meeting;

to have breakfast / lunch / dinner ;

to have a rest / a swim / a wash;

to have a drink / a cigarette / a day off

☺ В вопросительных предложениях глагол "to have" ставится перед подлежащим, в отрицательных имеет после себя отрицательную частицу "not".

E.g. Has he a dog? - No, he has not.

He has not a dog.

В прошедшем времени глагол "to have" имеет форму "had", в будущем "will have".

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Make the following sentences negative or positive.

1. My friend has a dog.
2. I have many books in my bookcase.
3. We have got many fruit-trees in our garden.
4. He has lunch at 2 o'clock.
5. They had a very good time yesterday.
6. They had a concert in that new hall.
7. They will go to the south next summer.
8. He will do shopping next Friday.
9. She will go to the library next week.
10. She had some mistakes in her composition.

Ex. 2. Complete the sentences adding the necessary question-tags.

1. She had a comfortable journey, ...?
2. He has lunch at 12 o'clock, ... ?
3. They had their examinations in June, ...?

4. She won't have a party tomorrow, ...?
5. They have a lot of things to do, ...?

Ex. 3. Practice the following sentences using “have-something-done” construction.

Model : My shoe was mended.– I had my shoe mended.

1. Someone cleaned my coat yesterday.
2. She asked the barber to cut his hair.
3. She asked someone to translate the text for her.
4. They asked the man to tune the piano.
5. She asked the dressmaker to lengthen her skirt.
6. The Browns asked the man to paint their house.
7. He asked the watchmaker to regulate her watch.
8. The students asked the photographer to take their photographs.
9. I asked my friend to repair my car.
10. She asked a dressmaker to make a new dress.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Say, if the verb “to have” is notional, auxiliary, modal or a part of a set phrase.

1. It has been a hard day.
2. Jane has got a nice voice.
3. You haven't had our dinner yet.
4. You don't have to worry.
5. My father has a farm in the North of Scotland.
6. Have they a car? –No, they haven't one yet.
7. I didn't have enough money to buy this coat.
8. I don't mind having a holiday for a change.
9. I've never been to Rome.
10. I hope you had a good time yesterday.

Ex.5. Answer the following questions given the reason for it.

Model : Have you a TV-set in your flat?– Yes, we have We have a TV-set because we like it.

1. Have you got time?

2. Do you have time?
3. Does he have to stay in bed?
4. Does he eat breakfast every morning?
5. Did he have his hair cut?
6. Have they anything interesting to do?
7. Have you got any flowers in your garden?
8. Have you got a new car?
9. Did you have to stay at home yesterday?
10. Did you spend your holidays in the south?

Ex.6. Translate into English.

1. У них большая семья.
2. У птицы два крыла.
3. Где вы обычно обедаете?
4. Я устала. Давай отдохнем.
5. У вас есть вопросы?
6. Джон сейчас на юге. Он хорошо проводит время там.
7. Спроси ее, когда у нас последний экзамен.
8. У меня нет этой фотографии.
9. У него новый автомобиль. – Неужели? А где старый?
10. Она занята. У нее много работы.

Ex.7. Translate into English the following text.

Мой друг Борис Смирнов.

У меня есть друг. Его зовут Борис Смирнов. Ему 32 года. Он инженер на заводе. У него много работы. Он очень занят и у него мало свободного времени.

Борис женат. У него жена, дочь и сын. У него также есть родители. Жена Бориса, Ольга, красивая молодая женщина. У нее светлые волосы и голубые глаза. Ольга учится в институте. У нее уроки по вечерам. Она увлекается спортом, но у нее мало времени для этого, т.к. она работает над дипломом.

У Бориса есть дочь. Ее зовут Анна. Она учится в школе. У нее уроки каждый день, но у нее нет уроков в субботу. В субботу и в воскресенье у нее выходной день. Анна любит читать. У нее много книг и журналов.

Сына Бориса зовут Миша. Ему 5 лет. Он ходит в детский сад. У него много игрушек дома.

Борис любит животных. У них дома есть собака и кошка. Дети любят играть с ними.

Родители Бориса живут в деревне. У них большой красивый дом и сад. У них есть домашние животные и птицы: корова, 5 овец, 20 гусей, 20 кур и цыплят. Борис помогает своим родителям. Он всегда хорошо проводит время в деревне со своей семьей.

У Бориса много друзей. Они часто проводят вместе время и хорошо отдыхают.

Ex. 8. Check yourself.

1. Какое значение имеет глагол "to have"?
2. Какие формы имеет глагол "to have" в Present, Past и Future Indefinite?
3. Какие функции может выполнять глагол "to have"?
4. Как образуется вопросительная и отрицательная форма с глаголом "to have"?
5. Как образуется вопросительная и отрицательная форма словосочетаний с глаголом "to have"?

ОБОРОТ “THERE +TO BE”

Оборот “there is” (“there are” во множественном числе) соответствует русскому «имеется, находится» и употребляется для выражения или отсутствия какого-либо лица или предмета в определенном месте. В русском языке соответствующие предложения начинаются с обстоятельства места.

E.g. There are many children in the garden – В саду много детей.

There is a large table in the room – В комнате большой стол.

В этом обороте “there” утратило какое-либо значение и стало формальным словом. В предложении за ним следует сказуемое “is” (“are”), а затем подлежащее.

Если подлежащее выражено исчисляемым существительным в единственном числе, то оно употребляется с неопределенным артиклем.

Если подлежащее выражено существительным во множественном числе или неисчисляемым существительным, артикль не употребляется.

Перед существительным, выражающим обстоятельство, употребляется определенный артикль.

E.g. There is a pen on the table.

There are books on the shelf.

There is bread on the plate.

Если в предложении с оборотом “there is”/“there are” имеется несколько подлежащих, то глагол “to be” согласуется с первым из них.

E.g. There is a lamp and three books on the table.

В вопросительной форме предложения с оборотом “there is”/“there are” глагол “to be” ставится на первое место.

E.g. There is a vase on the table.

Is there a vase on the table?

Краткие ответы состоят из слов “yes” или “no” и оборота в утвердительной или отрицательной форме.

E.g. –Is there a toy in the box?

– Yes, there is.

– No, there is not.

Отрицательная форма образуется при помощи отрицательного местоимения “no” (“никакой”), которое стоит перед существительным. Артикль в этом случае не употребляется.

E.g. There is no lamp on the table.

Отрицательная форма предложений с оборотом “there is”/“there are” образуется при помощи отрицательного местоимения “not”, если следующее за глаголом существительное, определяется неопределенным местоимением “any”, “much”, “many”, “few”, “little” или количественным числительным.

E.g. There are not many chairs in the room.

There is not any lamp on the wall.

There are not fifteen children in the classroom.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Put the sentences into the plural.

Model :There is a table in the room.

There are tables in the room.

1. There is a chair near the table.
2. There is a vase on the windowsill.
3. There is a book on the shelf.
4. There is a cup in the cupboard.
5. There is a bench under the tree.
6. There is a picture on the wall.
7. There is a fork among the spoons.
8. There is a window in the room.
9. There is a ball on the floor.
10. There is doll in the box.

Ex. 2. Put the sentences into the plural.

1. There was a boy near the window.
2. There was a car near the house.
3. There was a knife among the forks.
4. There was a map on the wall.
5. There was a bed in the bedroom.
6. There was a shelf on the wall.
7. There was a man near the car.
8. There was a flower in the vase.
9. There was a cat under the chair.
10. There was a stove in the kitchen.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets.

Model: There (to be) books on the table. There are books on the table.

There (to be) a book on the table. There is a book on the table.

1. There (to be) flowers in the vase.

2. There (to be) a magazine on the shelf.
3. There (to be) a glass on the table.
4. There (to be) toys in the box.
5. There (to be) cars near the shop.
6. There (to be) a piano near the door.
7. There (to be) some children in the club.
8. There (to be) balls in the box.
9. There (to be) a woman in the armchair.
10. There (to be) pupils in the class.

Ex. 4. Open the brackets.

Model: There (to be) a lamp on the table. There was a lamp on the table.

There (to be) pillows on the bed. There were pillows on the bed.

1. There (to be) a window in the room.
2. There (to be) children in the yard.
3. There (to be) flowers in the garden.
4. There (to be) a lot of toys in the box.
5. There (to be) a glass in the cupboard.
6. There (to be) dresses on the hook.
7. There (to be) a hat on the shelf.
8. There (to be) a vase on the windowsill.
9. There (to be) ducks on the pond.
10. There (to be) leaves on the tree.

Ex. 5. Read the following text and answer the questions.

TRAFALGAR SQUARE

Trafalgar Square is one of the central squares of London. In the middle of the square, there is a high column with the statue of Nelson. There are four stone lions around the column. Nelson stands heroically on his column opposite Whitehall – the seat of the British government. On each side of the column, there is a fountain. Trafalgar Square is the centre of social life of the English capital. It is dear to the hearts of all Londoners. Here you can see political meetings, protest marches or singing around the big Christmas-tree every New Year. Behind the column, there is an impressive building of the

National Gallery. At the corner of the square, there is a beautiful church of St. Martin. The wide square is always full of people. There are many tourists among them. There is much noise in the square because the traffic is heavy. There is little greenery here.

1. Where is Trafalgar Square? 2. What is there in the middle of the square? 3. What is there around Nelson column? 4. How many fountains are there near the column? 5. What is there opposite the column? 6. Why is this square dear to the hearts of all Londoners? 7. Why is there much noise in this square? 8. What church is there at the corner of the square?

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 6. Agree with the following statements

Model : You've got a book in front of you. Yes, there is a book in front of me.

1. He has got many foreign books in her library.
2. They have got many pets at home.
3. She has got three mistakes in her test.
4. You have got no laboratory on the first floor.
5. You can see a farm near the forest.
6. You can see a lot of pictures in the book.
7. You can see a TV-set in the hall.
8. You can see a large family in the picture.
9. You can see many difficult words in the text.
10. You can see many countries on this map.

Ex. 7. Ask general questions.

1. There are many photos in the album.
2. There was some clean paper on the desk.
3. There is nobody at home.
4. There were many students in the lab.
5. There is a key in his pocket.
6. There will be many apples in the garden.
7. There were no people in the hall.

8. There are too sandwiches in her bag.
9. There will be a lot of snow this winter.
10. There is a vase on the windowsill.

Ex. 8. Ask disjunctive questions.

1. There are twelve months in a year.
2. There are four seasons in a year.
3. There is much snow in winter.
4. There were a lot of rains last summer.
5. There are sixty minutes in an hour.
6. There will be a lot of vegetables in autumn.
7. There were 5 puppies in the box.
8. There was little milk in the bottle.
9. There are four weeks in a month.
- 10 There is no garden behind the cottage.

Ex. 9. Use the verb “to be” in the correct form.

1. There... a pen and two pencils on the desk.
2. There... some apples on the plate yesterday.
3. There... a lot of rains next summer
4. ... there much water in the jug?
5. ... there a lot of people at the lecture?
6. There... much bread on the table.
7. There... a lot of snow in the streets last winter.
8. ... there much or little money in the purse?
9. ... there much food in the fridge last week?
10. There... a lot of children`s clothes in this shop.

Ex. 10. Complete the sentences (use Present, Past or Future Simple).

1. In our library there...
2. In the street there...
3. In the room there...
4. Under the table there...
5. In Asia there...

6. In the picture there...
7. In the kitchen there...
8. In the University there...
9. In the book there...
10. In the sky there...

Ex. 11. Use “it” or “there”.

1. ... is winter. ... is a lot of snow.
2. ... was Christmas. ... were a lot of presents for the children under the Christmas tree.
3. ... were a lot of clouds in the morning. Now ... is clear again
4. I think ... is time to begin.
5. ... is wonderful music in this film.
6. Is a swimming pool near my house, but... is no water in it.
7. ... were a lot of rains last autumn.
8. Where ... is life, ... is hope.
9. Is... any news?
10. Is ... enough food in the house?
11. ... is nothing I can do to help you.
12. Let...be so.
13. ... no smoke without fire.
14. Let ... always be sunshine.
15. ... is nothing like walking about the countryside when ... is warm and ... sunshine and ... is not a single cloud in the sky and ... is not going to rain and ... is someone to make you happy.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 12. Ask about the place you want to find.

Model : I want to buy a new dress. Is there a shop near here?

1. I want to see a film.
2. I want to post a letter.
3. I want to buy a newspaper.
4. I want to get to the centre of the town.
5. I want to buy some food.

6. I want to buy a pair of shoes.
7. I am hungry.
8. I want to drink something.
9. I want to make a call home.
10. I want to buy vegetables and fruit.

Ex. 13. Use the verb "to be" in the correct form:

A. 1. There ... a pen and two pencils on the desk. 2. There ... two pencils and a pen on the desk. 3. There ... a lot of snow in the streets. 4. There ... much bread on the table. 5. There ... twelve chairs and a table in the room. 6. There ... a table and twelve chairs in the room. 7. ... there much water in the jug? 8. ... there much or little money in the purse? 9. ... there any chalk on the blackboard? 10. How many pages ... there in the book? 11. ... there much food in the fridge?

B. 1. There ... news from them. 2. There ... a lot of vegetables in the market. 3. There ... so little hair on his head that he looked much older. 4. There ... some money for you to spend. 5. The room seemed empty. There ... hardly any furniture. 6. There ... a lot of children's summer clothes in our shop. 7. In the newspapers there ... a lot of information about computers.

Ex. 14. Translate into English.

1. В этом журнале есть несколько интересных рассказов.
2. Прогноз погоды сообщает, что завтра будет дождь.
3. Сколько гостей будет на обеде?
4. В холодильнике есть масло, сыр, но нет молока.
5. В семье много детей, поэтому здесь всегда много работы по дому.
6. В комнате были стол, два стула и диван, больше ничего не было.
7. После собрания был концерт?
8. На этой стороне улицы есть кинотеатр.
9. Если в магазине есть рыба, купи, пожалуйста.
10. Сколько экзаменов будет летом?
11. Нет ничего лучше чашки крепкого кофе рано утром.
12. В ее лице было что-то знакомое.

Ex. 15. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Когда глагол "to be" употребляется как самостоятельный?
2. Когда он используется как вспомогательный глагол?
3. Что обозначает сочетание глагола "to be" с инфинитивом и сочетание "to be" + about + инфинитив?
4. Как образуется вопросительная и отрицательная форма с глаголом "to be"?
5. Какие основные типы вопросов есть в английском языке?
6. Как образуются основные типы вопросов с глаголом „to be“?
7. Какие формы имеет глагол "to be" в Present, Past и Future?
8. Что выражает оборот "there is" / "there are"?
9. Какие есть правила употребления глагола "to be" в обороте "there is" / "there are"?
10. Как образуется вопросительная и отрицательная форма предложений с оборотом "there is" / "there are"?

**UNIT 7. ГЛАГОЛ (THE VERB)
АНГЛИЙСКИЕ ВРЕМЕНА**

В отличие от русского языка, в котором существуют три времени – настоящее, прошедшее и будущее, система времен в английском языке значительно сложнее. Существуют четыре группы временных форм глаголов – группа Simple (Indefinite), группа Continuous (Progressive), группа Perfect и группа Perfect Continuous, в каждой из которых есть форма настоящего времени (Present), форма прошедшего времени (Past), форма будущего времени (Future) и форма будущего в прошедшем (Future in the Past).

Кроме того, так же как и в русском языке, предложения могут быть в активном (действительном) залоге (the Active Voice) и пассивном (страдательном) залоге (the Passive Voice).

**ГРУППА НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННЫХ (ПРОСТЫХ) ВРЕМЕН
(THE INDEFINITE/SIMPLE GROUP OF TENSES)**

Времена группы Indefinite (Simple) (простое действие в неопределенный период времени):

настоящее время — the Present Simple,
прошедшее время — the Past Simple,
будущее время — the Future Simple,
будущее в прошедшем — the Future in the Past.

Глаголы во временных формах группы Indefinite (Simple) обозначают действия в общем смысле, не указывая на продолженность этого действия или его завершенность. Обычно это факты (в настоящем, прошлом, будущем), последовательность идущих друг за другом действий или действия, совершающиеся с разной степенью регулярности.

НАСТОЯЩЕЕ НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННОЕ/ПРОСТОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PRESENT INDEFINITE/ SIMPLE TENSE)

☺ **Утвердительное предложение** в Present Indefinite (Simple) образуется при помощи инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы **to** во всех лицах, кроме третьего лица единственного числа, где к глаголу добавляется окончание **-s/es**

E.g. I **like** to play the guitar.

E.g. My brother **likes** to read detective stories.

* Глаголы, оканчивающиеся на шипящие или свистящие звуки (буквосочетания -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -tch, -x) в третьем лице единственного числа принимают окончание **- es**:

I pass – he passes, I dress – she dresses, I teach – he teaches, I wish – he wishes, I watch, she – watches.

* Глаголы, оканчивающиеся на **“y”** с предшествующей согласной, в третьем лице единственного числа меняют **“y”** на **“i”** и принимают окончание **- es**:

I cry – he cries, I carry – she carries, I play – he plays

* Глаголы **to go, to do** также принимают в третьем лице единственного числа окончание **- es**:

I go – he goes, I do – she does

☺ **Вопросительная форма** Present Indefinite (Simple) образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **“to do”** в настоящем времени (**“do”** со всеми лицами, кроме третьего лица единственного числа, с

которым употребляется “**does**”) и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы “**to**”, причем вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. Do you like to play the guitar?
Does he like to read detective stories?

☺ **Отрицательная форма Present Indefinite (Simple)** образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**to do**” в настоящем времени (“**do**” и “**does**”) и частицы “**not**” и формы инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы “**to**”:

I **do not** (don't) like to play the guitar.
He **does not** (doesn't) like to play the guitar.

The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense употребляется:

* для выражения общеизвестной истины или закона природы:

E.g. The Sun rises in the East.
Water boils at 100 degrees C.

* для выражения обычных, регулярно происходящих действий:

E.g. He takes the train to his work every morning.
We go to this café every other weekend.

* для констатации фактов в настоящем:

E.g. He works in a bank.

* Вместо Present Continuous для выражения настоящего длительного действия, происходящего в момент речи, с глаголами чувства и восприятия:

to see	to hear	to understand
to know	to love	to hate
to like	to remember	to forget
to recognize	to notice	to want
to wish	to seem	

* Вместо Future Indefinite для выражения будущего действия в придаточных предложениях времени и условия, относящихся к

будущему после союзов “if”, “when”, “as soon as”, “before”, “after”, “till”, “until”, “unless”:

E.g. I'll give you this book as soon as I read it.

* The Present Indefinite (Simple) Tense часто употребляется со следующими обстоятельствами времени:

usually	from time to time
always	as a rule
seldom	every (Monday, evening, month, week, year)
often	at the weekend
sometimes	in the morning/ evening

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Write the following sentences in the 3rd person singular:

1. I think I am ill.
2. They often visit their granny.
3. We live in Leeds.
4. You usually speak too quickly.
5. Do you like boiled potatoes?
6. Good animals obey their masters.
7. Heavy trucks make a lot of noise.

Ex. 2. Write the following sentences a) in the negative, b) in the interrogative forms.

1. She understands the rule.
2. He usually has breakfast at 8 o'clock.
3. The lecture starts at 10.15.
4. The flowers look fresh.
5. She usually walks in the morning.
6. He has coffee in the evening.
7. She remembers them well.
8. He plays chess very well.
9. She leaves home at 10 o'clock every day.
10. Ann misses you badly.
11. They feel very cold.
12. Tom looks sick.
13. They harvest grapes in March.
14. The last boat sails at 10 p.m.
15. That train goes very fast.

Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Simple:

1. Oscar Wilde and Bernard Shaw (be) the most witty British writers.
2. Fishermen often (tell) tales about their catches.
3. Their children (go) to a

private school. 4. Little Amanda (collect) all sorts of toy-pigs. 5. My father (like) a lot of milk in his tea and a few lumps of sugar. 6. Anything that he (say) (be) worth listening to. 7. We usually (spend) our holidays in Spain. 8. My English friends (live) in a nice house that (stand) on a hill that (overlook) Lake Windermere, which (be) in the Lake District. 9. What this sentence (mean)? 10. I (live) in Tver, which (be) my native town. 11. My brother (sing) in Italian opera. 12. My sister (have) a good appetite and she always (eat) heartily. 13. Let's go outside. It (be) terribly hot in the house. 14. What you (see) over there? 15. In England the traffic (keep) to the left but on the Continent it (keep) to the right. 16. This map (be) the largest that we (have). 17. They often (come) to see me in my town house. 18. The twittering of birds in the trees in spring (be) a pleasant sound.

Ex. 4. Answer the questions using the Present Simple.

1. What time do you go to the Institute? 2. What do you do on Sunday mornings? 3. How do you spend your leisure time? 4. What sort of radio programmes do you listen to? 5. How do you help your parents? 6. What sort of films do you enjoy? 7. Where do you read for your examinations? 8. Where do you have your meals? 9. What do you take if you have a headache? 10. How do you celebrate your birthday?

Ex. 5.

A. Complete the text with the negative form of the verbs in brackets.

ROMEO AND JULIET

Two families, the Montagues and Capulets, live in Verona, Italy, but they (get on) with each other. Romeo, son of Montague, thinks he is in love with Rosaline, but unfortunately she (love) him. He goes to see her at a party at the house of his enemy Capulet, but there he sees Juliet, Capulet's daughter. She (know) his name because he has a mask.

Tybalt, one of the Capulet family, tries to fight with Romeo, but Capulet (allow) this. However, Tybalt (agree) with him, and (forgive) Romeo for coming to the house. Romeo manages to talk to Juliet, and he kisses her. They (understand) that their families are enemies. When Romeo

learns the truth, he (care) that his love for Juliet could be very dangerous. Later he goes back to the house and stands in the garden. Juliet is standing on the balcony talking to herself about Romeo, but (see) him below in the garden. After he talks to her, they soon show their love to each other, and agree to get married. However, they (realize) that a terrible tragedy is about to happen.

B. Complete the text with the affirmative form of the verbs in brackets.

Emperor penguins (live) in the Antarctic. The sea (provide) all their food, so they are good swimmers. They (dive) under the water and (hold) their breath for up to 20 minutes. When the weather is very cold, the penguins (stand) in a group. This (keep) them warm. The Emperor is the only penguin that (breed) in winter in Antarctica. Each female (lay) one egg in May or June. Then they (return) to the sea to feed. Each male (stand) with an egg on his feet. His feet (keep) the egg warm. He (sleep) most of the time and (eat) no food for about 65 days. When the egg (hatch), the female (come) back and (find) her mate. Now the females (feed) the young penguins. The male (spend) his time eating. After a few weeks, the male (return) to the family, and then both parents (look after) the chick.

Ex. 6. Translate into English:

1. Обычно я делаю домашнее задание вечером. 2. Мой друг живет на Севере. 3. Моя сестра учится в медицинском колледже. 4. У них два занятия иностранным языком в неделю. 5. Он всегда навещает нас, когда бывает в Москве. 6. "Сколько времени вы тратите на дорогу домой?" - "Как правило, я трачу на дорогу домой около тридцати минут." 7. Он теперь редко путешествует. 8. Вы часто ходите в кино? 9. Она никогда не опаздывает. Она всегда приходит вовремя. 10. "Вы чувствуете что-нибудь?" - "Нет, я ничего не чувствую." 11. Его отец - инженер. Он строит мосты. 12. Я не учу французский язык, я учу немецкий. 13. Теперь мы редко с ними встречаемся. 14. Ее муж часто ездит в командировки?

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 7. Complete the sentences with the words from the box using them in the proper form of the Present Simple Tense.

look	be
go	seem
have	rain
start	eat
take	snow
speak	win

1. The child ... to school every day. His father ... him there in his car.
2. She always ... lunch at school. 3. Richard's life in Paris is a bit difficult.
He ... only English. 4. What's the matter? You ... very sad. 6. Liz is good at tennis. She ... every game. 6. It ... quite reasonable. 7. Winter is warm here. It ... very seldom. But sometimes it 8. Helen is on a diet. She ... a little.
9. He ... in a hurry. 10. The exams at school ... in April.

Ex. 8. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Simple. Retell the jokes.

a) A young man (to come) to the theatre. He (to sit) near two young girls who are talking all the time, and the young man (not to hear) the actors. At last he (to say) to the girls in a whisper, "I (to be) sorry, ladies, but I (not to hear) anything". "Very well," (to answer) one of the girls angrily, "this (to be) a private conversation and we (not to want) you to hear it."

b) A young man (to say) to his friend, "I (to know) a man who (to be) ninety years old, and he always (to feel) very well. He (to say) it (to be) because he (not to drink) wine, (not to eat) meat, (not to watch) television and (not to worry) about anything in his life." "It (to be) certainly good that he never (to get) ill in his life," his friend (to answer), "but I (not to be) sure that he really (to live)."

c) An Englishman, a Frenchman and an American once (to speak) about how fast the trains (to go) in their countries. Each of them (to tell) a

story to prove that his country (to have) the fastest trains. The Englishman (to say) that in England trains (to go) so fast that the trees which (to stand) along the railway (to look) like a big forest. The Frenchman (to say) that in France the trains (to go) so quickly that the rails (to become) red-hot. And the American (to tell) them the following story. 'Imagine,' I (to be) in the carriage and my daughter is standing on the platform, near my window. I (to want) to kiss her from the open window, but suddenly the train (to start) moving. It (to move) so quickly that, instead of my daughter, I (to kiss) a cow which is standing in the field six miles away from the station.

Ex. 9. Make up general questions to the following sentences:

1. Peter goes to the party. 2. His schoolbag is brown. 3. Mary can ski. 4. We meet our friends. 5. The teacher hands out the books. 6. Pat is a clever boy. 7. The monkey takes the banana. 8. Tony is hungry. 9. Tim has got a brother. 10. They are at Sarah's party. 11. You like apples. 12. Winter begins in December. 13. They are at home. 14. Tom can play football. 15. My mother speaks Spanish. 16. He goes to school. 17. She wants an ice cream. 18. We are ready. 19. Lions eat meat. 20. Donald can skate. 21. Tamara likes sweets. 22. The cat is on the chair. 23. Pam wants another T-shirt. 24. Mother irons my shirts. 25. They listen to the teacher. 26. I like black shoes. 27. We run to school. 28. It is sunny. 29. They talk about stickers. 30. She helps Roger.

Ex. 10. Translate into English:

1. Вы любите музыку? – Да, я люблю петь и танцевать. 2. Мы работаем в саду каждые выходные. 3. Какой язык она изучает? – Она изучает два иностранных языка: французский и немецкий. 4. Мой друг работает на заводе. 5. У нее много друзей в университете. 6. Твой отец любит смотреть телевизор? – Нет, он предпочитает играть в футбол. 7. Они часто навещают нас и нам это нравится. 8. Ваши дедушка и бабушка живут с вами? – Нет, они живут в Москве. 9. Мы редко ходим в кино. 10. Он увлекается спортом и играет в настольный теннис.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 11. Answer the questions:

1. Do you get along well with people? 2. Do you know how to use a computer? 3. Do you often do two things at a time? 4. Do you get upset when people are late for the appointments? 5. Do you get upset easily when things go wrong? 6. What do you look for in a friend? 7. Do you get your daily news from TV, radio or newspapers? 8. How many hours do you watch TV every day? 9. How many newspapers and magazines do you subscribe to or read regularly? 10. What do you do when you are happy? 11. What do you do when you are thirsty (hungry)? 12. What do you do when it's cold outside? 13. What does your friend do when he is bored? 14. What does your friend do if he is unwell?

Ex. 12. Use the correct form of the verbs:

1. Her brothers always tell the truth, she sometimes (to lie). 2. They always gossip, she never (to do) it. 3. They laugh a lot, she (to cry) a lot. 4. We eat much, she (to eat) little. 5. They smoke cigars, he never (to smoke). 6. They often get angry, she never (to get) angry. 7. I like meat, she (to like) fish. 8. We go to the disco three times a week, he never (to go) there. 9. They never ask questions, my little sister (to ask) a lot of questions. 10. I always give her good advice, she never (to follow) it.

Ex. 13. Use the Present Simple Tense:

Cats (to communicate) with one another, with other animals and with human beings in different ways. For this they (to use) sounds, body signals and scents. The sounds a cat (to make) (to have) various meanings. It (to depend) on the situation. Sometimes a meow (to be) a friendly greeting, sometimes it (to express) curiosity, hunger or loneliness. When a cat (to purr), it usually (to mean) that it (to be) happy, but some cats also (to purr) when they (to be) sick. Hisses and screams (to indicate) anger and fear. As means of communication cats also (to use) various body and tail positions. A friendly cat (to raise) its tail vertically when it (to greet) someone. An angry or frightened cat (to move) its tail from side to side, (to arch) its back and (to puff) up its fur.

Ex. 14. Look at this extract from Linda Magee's letter to her pen friend. There are some mistakes in it. Find and correct them.

Dear Akram,

Thank you for your very interesting letter. I am very pleased to be your pen friend. Are you really have a swimming pool in the garden? It sound wonderfully. As you knows from my advertisement, I have 17 years old and came from Aberdeen. I've got two sisters, Mary and Elisabeth, and they are both older than me. My father own a small paper factory, but my mother don't work. We living in a house just outside the city. I enjoying playing football and I am like science-fiction films.

Ex. 15. Translate into English:

A)

Питер студент университета. Он живет в общежитии. Пять раз в неделю у него занятия в университете. В субботу и воскресенье он не ходит в университет. Питер занимается спортом, он также увлекается музыкой. Он часто ходит с друзьями на концерт. Он сам играет на скрипке и принимает участие в студенческих концертах. Питер специализируется по истории России и изучает русский язык, но он еще не знает, кем он хочет стать. У него есть друзья в России. Это студенты, которые изучают английский. Они регулярно пишут письма друг другу, а иногда разговаривают по телефону. Питер обычно говорит по-английски, а его друзья – по-русски, но они понимают друг друга. На каникулы Питер обычно ездит к своим родственникам, которые живут в Канаде. В этом году он обещает приехать в Россию и пишет своим друзьям, что много читает о Москве, о ее достопримечательностях, музеях, театрах и т.д.

B)

1. Как правило, студенты сдают экзамены два раза в год. 2. Мне не нравится в Москве, здесь очень шумно. 3. Сколько времени тебе нужно, чтобы сделать этот перевод? 4. Этот автобус здесь никогда не

останавливается. 5. Я не знаю, какие у нас сегодня занятия. 6. Она никогда никому не верит. 7. Раз в неделю они обедают в ресторане. 8. Он очень редко ездит на работу на машине. 9. В это время года здесь часто идет дождь. 10. Вы понимаете меня?

ПРОШЕДШЕЕ НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННОЕ/ПРОСТОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PAST INDEFINITE/ SIMPLE TENSE)

По способу образования прошедшего неопределенного (простого) времени все английские глаголы делятся на правильные и неправильные.

☺ **Утвердительная форма Past Indefinite (Simple) правильных глаголов** образуется при помощи прибавления окончания – “ed” к инфинитиву смыслового глагола:

Окончание – “ed” произносится:

* как [d] после звонких согласных (кроме “d”) и гласных: to open - opened, to play – played,

* как [t] после глухих согласных (кроме “t”): to work – worked, to wish - wished

* как [ɪd] после согласных “d”, “t”: to want – wanted, to intend – intended

При образовании Past Indefinite (Simple) соблюдаются следующие правила орфографии:

* Глаголы, оканчивающиеся в инфинитиве на – “y” с предшествующей согласной, меняют “y” на “i”: to study – studied. Если же перед y стоит гласный, то “y” сохраняется: to stay - stayed

* если односложный глагол в инфинитиве оканчивается на одну согласную, перед которой стоит краткая гласная, то конечная согласная удваивается: to stop - stopped

* если глагол оканчивается на “l”, то “l” удваивается: to travel - travelled

Неправильные глаголы образуют Past Indefinite (Simple) путем изменения корневой гласной или всей основы глагола (см. Приложение, Таблица неправильных глаголов). Эти формы необходимо заучивать!

to begin – began, to write – wrote, to read – read, to leave – left, to get – got

☺ **Вопросительная форма** Past Indefinite (Simple) всех глаголов кроме глагола “**to be**” образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**to do**” в прошедшем времени (**did**) и формы инфинитива смыслового глагола, причем вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. **Did** you **work** yesterday? **Did** you **go** to the sea-side last summer?
Where **were** you last night? **Was** it cold last week?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** Past Indefinite (Simple) всех глаголов кроме глагола “**to be**” образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**to do**” в прошедшем времени (**did**), частицы “**not**” и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы “**to**”:

E.g. I **did not (didn't)** **work** yesterday. We **did not (didn't)** **go** to the sea-side last summer.

I **was not** at home last night. They **were not happy** to meet you.

The Past Indefinite (Simple) Tense употребляется:

* для выражения однократного действия в прошлом с такими обозначениями времени как

yesterday	ago (an hour, a week ago, a year)
the day before yesterday	when
last (week, month, year)	in 1997

E.g. I saw John yesterday. She entered the university last year.

* для выражения обычных, повторяющихся действий в прошлом:

E.g. Last month I went to the theatre every week. We went to the forest every day last summer.

* для выражения ряда последовательных действий в прошлом:

E.g. I got up, had breakfast and went to work. We took our textbooks, opened them and began to read.

* для выражения повторяющихся действий в прошлом употребляется также конструкция **used to + инфинитив** (иметь обыкновение)

E.g. I used to come to see them on Sundays.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Translate the following sentences into Russian; find the verbs in the Past Simple:

1. She studied English a year ago. 2. He finished his design last night. 3. We walked home yesterday. 4. Yesterday I skied in the country. 5. The students went to St. Petersburg last week. 6. My daughter did her best to finish the report in time. 7. Our class began at 11.30. 8. My brother left for England last year. 9. It took him some years to master German. 10. First spring flowers appeared in the fields. 11. He made his report on Monday. 12. We saw the dean yesterday. 13. He did the translation without any difficulty. 14. He spoke on the same topic.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets, using the verbs in the Past Simple Tense. Translate the joke and learn it by heart.

A Joke

They (walk) in the lane together,
The sky (be) covered with stars,

They (reach) the gate in silence,
He (lift) down the bars.

She neither (smile) nor (thank) him
Because she (know) no how,
For he (be) just a farmer's boy
And she – the farmer's cow.

Ex. 3. Read a sentence about the present and then write a sentence about the past.

Example: Granny usually gets up at 6.30. Yesterday she got up at 6.30.

1. Granny usually wakes up early. Yesterday morning

2. Granny usually walks in the garden. Yesterday

3. Granny usually has a sandwich for lunch. Yesterday

4. Granny usually goes out in the evening. Yesterday evening

5. Granny usually sleeps very well. Yesterday

Ex. 4. Use the verbs in brackets in the Past Indefinite:

1. He (to stay) at the Institute after classes. 2. I (to know) all the words very well. 3. She (to study) English at the Institute. 4. She (to write) the letter. 5. Some years ago she (to live) in the country. 6. She (to make) an interesting report. 7. Last year he (to work) at the factory. 8. Yesterday we (to go) home by metro. 9. It (to take) me half an hour to get home. 10. We (to see) the film a week ago. 11. She (to find) time to help us. 12. He (to do) the translation without a dictionary. 13. He always (to do) his best to learn to speak English correctly and to understand it. 14. Last night we (to watch) a hockey match on TV. 15. She (to leave) for England the day before yesterday.

Ex. 5. Fill in the table:

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
write			
	drew		
	drank		
		blown	
			падать
make			
		done	
			продавать
	went		
			давать
			брать
		eaten	
			быть, являться
buy			
read			
	left		
			чувствовать
		stood	
		spoken	
		told	
get			
	swam		
			строить
		broken	
	caught		
			слышать
choose			
come			
			хранить
	cut		
cost			
	sat		
		had	
			начинать
	knew		

win			
			спать
lose			
	met		
		put	
			бегать
see			
	sent		
think			
spend			
	taught		
			петь
			бросать

Ex. 6. Put one of these verbs in each sentence:

hurt, teach, spend, sell, throw, fall, catch, buy, cost.

Example: I was thirsty, so I bought apple juice in the shop.

1. My father _____ me how to drive when I was 17.
2. James _____ down the stairs and _____ his leg.
3. We needed some money so we _____ our summer house.
4. They _____ a lot of money yesterday. They _____ a dishwasher which _____ 10000 roubles.
5. The boy _____ the ball to the dog and the dog _____ it.

Ex. 7. Translate into English, using the Past Indefinite Tense.

1. Мы начали этот опыт на прошлой неделе.
2. Они вернулись домой в 7 часов вечера.
3. Мы решили послать это письмо вчера.
4. Кому вы отдали эти журналы?
5. Вчера я встретил Стива в библиотеке.
6. Когда вы его видели в последний раз? - В прошлый вторник.
7. В прошлом году мы не изучали французский. Мы изучали английский.
8. В котором часу вы начали работать вчера? - После обеда. У нас было мало работы.
9. Погода была хорошая, и мы с друзьями пошли в парк.
10. Где вы были час тому назад?
11. Я встретил ее позавчера, и она рассказала мне об этом.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 8. Open the brackets, using the Present Indefinite or the Past Indefinite.

1. They (to be) in London last month. 2. Who of your friends (to speak) English? 3. How many lessons you (to have) every day? 4. I (not to be) at home yesterday, I (to go) for a walk. 5. He usually (to sleep) well. But last night he (to sleep) bad. 6. Your sister (to be) a doctor? - Yes, she (to become) a doctor two years ago. 7. He (not to shave) today because he (not to have) time. 8. You (to get) up early on Sunday? - Yes. But last Sunday I (to sleep) till ten o'clock. 9. When you (to leave) the meeting yesterday? 10. She (to enjoy) the film, which we (to see) last week? 11. Why your parents (to be) so angry last night? - Because my brother (to be) late.

Ex. 9. Put the verbs in the negative forms:

1. We had our breakfast at the Institute dining room. 2. He wanted to go to Kiev during the holidays. 3. Our English class began at 10 o'clock. 4. Last night I got a letter from my parents. 5. My daughter tried to write the letter in English. 6. She made a report last week. 7. It snowed hard. 8. Dark clouds appeared in the sky. 9. We did our best to come in time.

Ex. 10. Put the verbs in the positive forms:

1. He did not go home after the lecture. 2. We did not do these exercises. 3. Yesterday I did not leave home. 4. We did not finish our work in time. 5. I did not see this film. 6. We did not know your name. 7. She did not stay with us. 8. He did not attend classes in physical culture last year. 9. Your son did not become an architect. 10. It did not rain yesterday. 11. We did not watch TV last night. 12. It did not look like rain when we went out of the house. 13. They did not get home by bus. They took a tram.

Ex. 11. Write general and special questions:

1. We listened to the latest news on the radio. 2. The meeting began at 3 o'clock. 3. My father left for London last week. 4. I got up late yesterday. 5. We went to the cinema a week ago. 6. We spent the holidays in the country last summer. 7. It was pleasant to bathe in the river in summer. 8. There were

a lot of leaves on the ground in the park. 9. He asked the same question.
10. We went in for skating last winter.

Ex. 12. Rewrite this text in the past:

Boris wakes up when it is already quite light. He looks at his watch. It is a quarter to seven. Quick! Boris jumps out of bed and runs to the bathroom. He has just time to take a cold shower and drink a glass of tea with bread and butter. He is in a hurry to catch the 8 am train. At the railway station he meets three other boys from his group. They all have small backpacks and fishing rods.

In less than an hour they get off the train at a small station near the wood. They walk very quickly and soon find themselves on the shore of a large lake. The boys spend the whole day there fishing, boating and swimming. They return home late at night, tired but happy.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 13. Use the verbs in brackets in the Past Indefinite:

Goldilocks and the Three Bears

Once upon a time, there (be) three bears: huge Papa Bear, ordinary Mama Bear and tiny little Baby Bear. They (live) in a great big wood.

One day, ordinary Mama Bear (cook) a delicious porridge for her family and (put) it into bowls: a huge bowl for huge Papa Bear, an ordinary bowl for ordinary Mama Bear and a little bowl for tiny little Baby Bear. To give the porridge some time to cool down, the three bears (go) for a walk.



Near the great big wood, there (live) a little girl called Goldilocks. She (be / not) allowed to go into the wood. But one day, she (sneak) out of the house and into the great big wood. After a while she (come) to the bears' house. She (knock) at the door. She (look) through the windows. But nobody (seem) to be there. So, little Goldilocks (step) inside.

In the kitchen, Goldilocks (smell) the porridge. She (get) very hungry and (try) the porridge in the huge bowl – too hot. Then she (taste) some of the porridge from the ordinary bowl - too cold. But the porridge in the little bowl (be) just right and Goldilocks (eat) it all up.

In the sitting room, there (stand) the three bears' chairs. Goldilocks (sit) down in the huge chair - too hard. She (like / not) the ordinary chair either - too soft. She (love) the little chair, however. But she (sit / not) on this one very long as soon it (break) into pieces. So, Goldilocks (go) on exploring.

In the bedroom there (be) three beds. Goldilocks suddenly (feel) very tired. She (climb) onto the huge bed - too hard. Then she (crawl) into the ordinary bed - too soft. The little bed, however, (be) right. So, Goldilocks (lie) down. And in next to no time, she (fall) asleep.

After a while, the three bears (return) home. One look at their bowls and chairs and they (start) wondering. Something (be / not) right. They (come) into the bedroom. And there they (see) little Goldilocks in Baby Bear's bed. The three bears (watch) her for a while and then they (wake) her up. Goldilocks (open) her eyes. She (see) the bears, (begin) to scream and as fast as she (can), Goldilocks (run) out of the bears' house.

The three bears (follow) her. But at the edge of the wood bears suddenly (stop). Frightened little Goldilocks (stop \ not). She (hurry) home to her parents and she never (visit) the bears' house again.

Ex. 14. Open the brackets, using the Present Indefinite or the Past Indefinite.

1. His mother (to be) a housewife. 2. They (to be) happy to see you now? 3. You (to write) the test yesterday. 4. She (not to go) to school. She (to be) ill. 5. His brother (to come) yesterday? - No, he (not to come). He (to be) busy. 6. They (to have) a nice weekend last week. 7. Yesterday he (to get) home and (to take) his dog for a walk. 8. You often (to go) to the theatre? - Not very often. Usually we (to go) there once a month. 9. Why Susan (not to notice) us last night? - We (to be) in the shadow and she (not to see) us. 10. What animals you (to like) better: cats or dogs? 11. She (to buy) a new dress two days ago? - No, she (not to buy) it. 12. What your sister (to do) every Sunday? - She (to meet) with her friends. 13. He (not to understand) the teacher at the last lesson. 14. Last month we (to move) to other place.

15. She (to be) ill now. She (to eat) an ice-cream yesterday. 16. They (to sell) their house a week ago? - I (not to know). 17. My grandmother often (to forget) her spectacles in her room when she (to leave) the house. 18. Can you tell me what the weather (to be) like? 19. I (to be) in this town last year. 20. Her daughter (to draw) very well.

Ex. 15. Translate into English:

1. Это дом принадлежит моему брату. Он тебе нравится? 2. Она никогда не теряет веры в будущее. Она оптимистка. 3. Что ты купила вчера в магазине? — Я купила новое платье. 4. Почему ты не пришел вчера в школу? — Вчера я чувствовал себя плохо. 5. Что они делали в воскресенье? — Они ходили на прогулку. 6. Я не смог позвонить ей, потому что не знал номера ее телефона. 7. Почему он не хочет играть в футбол? — Он устал. 8. Где ты был в три часа? — Я навестил своего больного друга. 9. Они построили этот дом в прошлом году, но не живут в нем. 10. Тебе нравится ездить на экскурсии? - Да, если они интересные. 11. Твоя подруга знает немецкий? — Нет, не знает. Но она хорошо разговаривает по-английски. 12. Где ты купил эту книгу? - Я купил ее в книжном магазине в прошлый вторник. 13. Почему она опоздала вчера на обед? — Она была занята на работе. 14. Ты хочешь пойти на концерт этого певца? — Нет, я был на его концерте в прошлом году. 15. Как тебе понравилась вчерашняя телепередача? — Я не смотрела вчера телевизор. 16. Как правило, она не обсуждает такие важные вопросы по телефону. 17. Никто не хочет верить ему. Почему? Он всегда говорит правду. 18. Было поздно, когда они мне позвонили. 19. Вы ходили вчера на дискотеку? — Нет, у нас не было времени. 20. Он всегда знает, что делать и дает хорошие советы.

БУДУЩЕЕ НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННОЕ/ПРОСТОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE FUTURE INDEFINITE/ SIMPLE TENSE)

☺ **Утвердительная форма** Future Indefinite (Simple) образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов **“shall”** (для 1 лица единственного и множественного числа) и **“will”** (для всех остальных лиц) и инфинитива смыслового глагола без **“to”**. В современном

английском языке имеется тенденция к употреблению вспомогательного глагола “**will**” для всех лиц.

E.g. I shall (will) do it tomorrow.

He will graduate from the university in three years.

☺ **Вопросительная форма Future Indefinite (Simple)** образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов “**shall**” и “**will**” и инфинитива смыслового глагола без “**to**”, причем вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. Will you do it tomorrow?

When will you graduate from the university?

☺ **Отрицательная форма Future Indefinite (Simple)** образуется при помощи вспомогательных глаголов “**shall**” и “**will**” и частицы “**not**” и инфинитива смыслового глагола без частицы “**to**”:

E.g. I shall not do it tomorrow.

He will not graduate from the university in three years.

В разговорной речи в утвердительных и отрицательных предложениях обычно употребляются сокращенные формы вспомогательных глаголов: I’ll, we’ll, he’ll, you’ll, shan’t, won’t:

E.g. He’ll send her a telegramme tomorrow.

I’ll pay you back.

The Future Indefinite (Simple) Tense употребляется:

* для выражения однократного или повторяющегося действия в будущем с такими обозначениями времени как

tomorrow	in (an hour, a week, a year)
the day after tomorrow	soon
next (week, month, year)	tonight

E.g. He’ll return in a minute.

I’ll see them next weekend.

* для выражения ряда последовательных действий или событий в будущем:

E.g. I'll come home, have supper, watch TV and go to bed at 10 o'clock.

* для выражения решений, принимаемых спонтанно, в момент речи:

E.g. I'll take this salad.

* для выражения событий в будущем с глаголами и наречиями: to think, to believe, to expect, to hope, to be sure, to be afraid, probably, perhaps, etc.

E.g. I'm afraid we will be late for the meeting.

We'll hope we'll see them tonight.

ПРИДАТОЧНЫЕ ПРЕДЛОЖЕНИЯ УСЛОВИЯ И ВРЕМЕНИ (IF, WHEN SENTENCES)

В английском языке в придаточных предложениях условия и времени после союзов **if, when, as soon as, before, after, till, until, unless** глаголы употребляются в форме настоящего времени (Present Simple). Глаголы главного предложения стоят в форме будущего времени (Future Simple):

E.g. I'll go to the cinema if I **finish** my work.

When the meeting **is** over, we'll go home.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Open the brackets using the Future Indefinite (Simple) Tense:

1. I want to get a medical checkup. I (to go) to my doctor tomorrow.
2. He (to give) me a complete examination. 3. The nurse (to lead) me into one of the examination rooms. 4. I (to take) off my clothes and (to put) on a hospital gown. 5. Dr. Setton (to come) in, (to shake) my hand, and (to say)

“hello”. 6. I (to stand) on his scale so he can measure my height and my weight. 7. He (to take) my pulse. Then he (to take) my blood pressure. 9. After he takes my blood pressure, he (to take) some blood for a blood analysis. 10. He (to examine) my eyes, ears, nose, and throat. 11. He (to listen) to my heart with a stethoscope.

Ex. 2. Open the brackets using Future Indefinite or Present Indefinite (all the sentences refer to the future)

1. If I (to stay) some more days in your town, I (to call) on you and we (to have) a good talk. 2. He (to go) to the Public Library very often when he (to be) a student. 3. As soon as I (to return) from school, I (to ring) you up. 4. You (to pass) many towns and villages on your way before you (to arrive) in Moscow. 5. I (to stay) at home till she (to come). Then we (to go) to the theatre if she (to bring) tickets. 6. I (to go) to university when I (to leave) school. 7. When he (to return) to St Petersburg, he (to call) on us. 8. If I (to see) him, I (to tell) him about their letter. 9. We (to gather) at our place when my brother (to come) back from Africa. 10. I (to sing) this song with you if you (to tell) me the words.

Ex. 3. Translate into English:

1. Он сделает упражнения по английскому языку, если у него не будет других дел. 2. Если я не помогу ему, завтра он не напишет контрольную работу. 3. Он не пойдет в библиотеку сегодня вечером. 4. Если он не пойдет в библиотеку, он будет дома. 5. Завтра мы будем дома. 6. Если завтра мы будем дома, мы посмотрим эту программу по телевизору. 7. Ее не будет завтра дома. 8. Если завтра ее не будет дома, оставь ей записку. 9. Завтра будет хорошая погода. 10. Если завтра будет хорошая погода, мы поедем за город.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Indefinite Tense.

1. He (to be) here soon. 2. The dress (to be) ready tomorrow. 3. They (to be) at the station in time for the train. 4. I (to know) the result in a day. 5. I (to be) twenty years old next year. 6. They (to remember) you well.

7. When he (to come) back? 8. When he comes, I (to apologize) to him. 9. I (not see) this beautiful city again. 10. I (to recognize) his pictures anywhere.

Ex. 5. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present or the Future Indefinite.

1. When he (call) I (give) him a piece of my mind. 2. I (be) at home if you (need) anything. 3. They (be) in the gallery if you (decide) to speak to them. 4. If they (want) your advice, they (get) in touch with you. 5. If you (have) anything to report, put it in writing and send it to me. 6. I (write) you about it when I (have) time. 7. He (wait) until they (send) for him. 8. He (be) all right when this (be) over. 9. I'd like to ask you a few more questions before you (go). 10. I (not know) when they (come) to see us. 11. Ask him if he (stay) for dinner.

Ex. 6. Translate into English.

1. В следующем году мне будет 20 лет. 2. Возможно, он придет сегодня. 3. Когда вы начнете изучать иностранный язык? 4. Он думает, вам не понравится новый балет. 5. Она будет дома в 6 часов? - Нет. 6. Я надеюсь, вы хорошо напишете контрольную работу. 7. У вас завтра будет много работы? - Да. 8. Экзамены начнутся 1 июня. 9. Фильм будет очень интересный. 10. Мы увидимся с ним на следующей неделе. 11. Они не начнут совещание, пока не придет главный инженер. 12. Если вы встретите их, попросите их позвонить нам. 13. Вы сразу узнаете Мэри, как только увидите ее.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 7. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Indefinite:

1. We (read) the newspaper in class every day.
2. He always (prepare) his homework carefully.
3. We often (play) tennis on Saturday.
4. Helen (work) very hard.
5. They usually (travel) by car.
6. My sister (eat) in the café every day.

Ex. 8. Put the following sentences into the negative and interrogative forms:

1. He knows French well.
2. I understand everything he says.
3. She makes mistakes in spelling.
4. We use our books in class.
5. They live in Moscow.
6. They stayed there all summer.
7. He worked in that institute for many years.
8. Peter passed all the exams.
9. They will return in October.
10. These exercises will be easy for you.

Ex. 9. Open the brackets using the Past Indefinite:

1. We (work) in our garden yesterday.
2. He always (want) to learn English.
3. Ann and I (talk) over the telephone yesterday.
4. They (live) in France for many years.
5. The meeting (last) about 2 hours.
6. I (forget) to bring my notebook to you.
7. The Petrovs (take) their children to the south last year.
8. He (tell) the whole story to us.
9. They (go) to the park after the lesson.
10. George (think) about his problems.

Ex. 10. Open the brackets using the Future Indefinite:

1. She (find) the book you need.
2. They (see) us tomorrow.
3. I (finish) my work in April.
4. The shops (close) at 9 today.
5. We (arrive) to Moscow next week.

Ex. 11. Open the brackets using one of the following tense forms: Present, Past or Future Indefinite.

1. She seldom (to return) home early.
2. He (to get) a new flat soon.
3. She (to leave) for England the day before yesterday.

4. They (not to like) the town.
5. If it (to rain) tomorrow, we (not to go for a walk) with you.
6. Your father (to smoke)?
7. We (not to study) next week.
8. When you (to see) them last time?
9. You (to attend) this lecture tomorrow?
10. Last summer I (not to lie) in the sun.

Ex. 12. Choose the right variant:

1. I (to get up) early yesterday.
a) get b) gets c) will get d) got
2. Our lessons (to be over) at a quarter to two.
a) is b) are c) be d) was
3. His sister always (to give) me books to read.
a) give b) gives c) does give d) did give
4. David never (to take) bus to work.
a) doesn't take b) don't take c) take d) takes
5. They will understand you if you (not to speak) fast.
a) will not speak b) don't speak c) doesn't speak d) didn't speak
6. What did he do ...?
a) in some days b) tomorrow c) last Monday d) soon
7. They ... in the park when it began to rain.
a) were b) was c) will be d) are
8. When you are ready, we (to join) you.
a) join b) will join c) joined d) joins
9. I like coffee, but my brother (to prefer) green tea.
a) prefer b) prefers c) will prefer d) preferred
10. I will not marry ... I am thirty years old.
a) until b) till c) after d) before

Ex. 13. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Как образуется отрицательная форма the Present Indefinite (Simple)?
2. Какие существуют особенности в правописании глаголов при добавлении окончания –s/es в the Present Indefinite (Simple)?

3. С какими обстоятельствами времени употребляют the Present Indefinite (Simple)?

4. Как образовать the Past Indefinite (Simple) правильных глаголов?

5. В каких случаях следует употреблять the Past Indefinite (Simple)?

6. Для образования какого времени используются вспомогательные глаголы shall, will?

7. Назовите формы простого прошедшего времени от следующих глаголов: buy, know, see, go, have, be, drink, take, give, run.

8. Какое правило употребления будущего времени характерно для придаточных предложений условия и времени?

9. Как образуется отрицательная форма the Past Indefinite (Simple)?

10. Назовите сигнальные слова, характерные для употребления Future Indefinite (Simple)?

UNIT 8. ГРУППА ДЛИТЕЛЬНЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE CONTINUOUS / PROGRESSIVE GROUP OF TENSES)

Времена группы Continuous (длительное действие в определенный момент или период времени):

настоящее время – the Present Continuous

прошедшее время – the Past Continuous

будущее время – the Future Continuous

будущее в прошедшем – the Future Continuous in the Past

Глаголы во временных формах группы Continuous (Progressive) обозначают длительное действие в настоящем, прошлом или будущем. На русский язык обычно переводятся глаголами несовершенного вида.

to be + Participle I

Participle I: Verb + ing = Ving

do+ing= doing

Present Continuous	Past Continuous	Future Continuous
Образование	Образование	Образование
am, is, are + Ving am, is, are + doing	was, were + Ving was, were + doing	shall be, will be + Ving shall be, will be + doing
He is listening to music now. Is he listening to music now? He is not listening to music now.	We were waiting for him from 5 till 6. Were you waiting for him from 5 till 6? We were not waiting for him from 5 till 6.	He will be flying to London at this time tomorrow. Will he be flying to London at this time tomorrow? He will not (won't) be flying to London at this time tomorrow.
Употребление	Употребление	Употребление
1. Для выражения действия, происходящего в данный момент, т.е. в момент речи (now, at the moment) What are you doing? – I am writing a report. 2. Для выражения запланированного действия, которое будет происходить в ближайшем будущем. Are you doing anything special tonight? – Yes, I am going to the student's club. 3. Вместо длительного действия в будущем времени, в придаточных предложениях условия и времени после «when» и «if». E.g. If he is smoking, when I am absent, I'll blame him. 4. Глаголы «to be», «to appear», «to believe», «to become», «to expect», «to feel», «to forgive», «to forget», «to like», «to	1. Для выражения действия, которое происходило в определенный момент в прошлом. Этот момент может быть выражен: - точным указанием времени: at 6 o'clock - промежутком времени from 2 till 3 - другим действием в прошлом: when I saw him ... E.g. He was driving a car at 5 o'clock yesterday. We were writing a composition from 6 till 9 o'clock yesterday. They were reading a newspaper when he came in. The Past Continuous Tense переводится на русский язык глаголом прошедшего времени «ждал», «читал»	1. Для выражения действия, которое будет происходить в определенный момент в будущем. Этот момент может быть выражен: - точным указанием времени: at 6 o'clock - промежутком времени: from 2 till 3 - другим действием в будущем E.g. She will be reading a book at 7 o'clock tomorrow. He will be cleaning the room from 5 till 6 tomorrow. We shall be discussing this problem when he comes. The Future Continuous Tense переводится на русский язык глаголом будущего времени «буду читать», «буду смотреть»

<p>hate», «to hear», «to know», «to see», «to think», «to seem» не употребляются в форме Continuous.</p> <p>Иногда они употребляются во временах Continuous, лишь в отдельных случаях.</p> <p>E.g. How are you feeling? (in the medical sense) He is expecting the news. (in the meaning of “wait”)</p>		
---	--	--

Причастие I, или причастие настоящего времени, образуется прибавлением окончания -ing к инфинитиву глагола без частицы “to”:

to go — going

to study — studying

Примечания: 1. Если глагол оканчивается на немое -e, то оно отбрасывается: to write — writing; to live — living.

2. Конечная согласная глагола удваивается, чтобы сохранить краткое произношение гласной: to sit — sitting; to run — running.

3. Если основа глагола оканчивается на -“ie”, то “ie” меняется на у перед окончанием -ing: to lie — lying; to tie — tying.

Сравните времена:

Present Continuous	Present Simple
<p>употребляется со словами now, at present, at the moment для обозначения — действия в момент речи (They are writing a composition now);</p> <p>— действия, которое длится некоторое время (I am working at the university at present);</p> <p>— действия, запланированного на ближайшее будущее (He is coming tonight).</p>	<p>1. Обычного, постоянного, типичного действия или характерного признака, свойства подлежащего, а также для передачи общеизвестных фактов и простых истин, имеющих место в настоящем, но не привязанных к моменту речи.</p> <p>The Earth goes round the Sun.</p> <p>2. Регулярно повторяющихся действий в настоящем.</p> <p>Every day I work at my English.</p>

	<p>3. Ряда последовательных действий в настоящем. I get up at seven, do morning exercises, then I have breakfast.</p> <p>4. Для выражения действия, происходящего в момент речи: а) с глаголами, не употребляющимися в формах Continuous; б) когда желают лишь констатировать сам факт действия. I see a ship in the distance.</p> <p>5. Для выражения будущего действия, запланированного расписанием, графиком (как правило, употр. с глаголами, обозначающими движение): The next train leaves in an hour.</p>
Past Continuous	Past Simple
<p>означает длительное действие, продолжавшееся в то время, о котором идет речь. Оно придает предложению определенный стилистический оттенок наглядности и протекания действия во времени. Время может быть обозначено указанием: 1) точного момента или отрезка времени, 2) другого одновременного действия (краткого или длительного). Глаголы в форме Past Continuous на русский язык переводятся только глаголами несовершенного вида.</p>	<p>Обозначает действие (как факт), имевшее место в прошлом (без уточнения его видовой характеристики, т. е. законченности, незаконченности, протекания во времени, длительности).</p>
<p>1. It was raining the whole day yesterday. 2. He was working at his report from 6 till 9 o'clock in the evening. 3. He was speaking about his project and we were listening to him. 4. I met the girl when I was going home.</p>	<p>1. It rained yesterday. 2. He worked hard at his report, that's why it is so interesting. 3. I saw him three days ago. 4. I met her many times last week.</p>

Future Continuous	Future Simple
<p>Обозначает длительное действие, которое будет продолжаться в то время, о котором идет речь.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I shall be painting her portrait at 5 o'clock tomorrow. 2. He will be making a report from 12 till 2 o'clock tomorrow. 3. They will be working in the garden while I am preparing dinner. 4. The children will be sleeping when he comes. 	<p>Обозначает действие, которое произойдет в будущем.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I shall begin painting her portrait next week. 2. I shall make a report on this topic tomorrow, if you like. 3. I shall prepare dinner when I come home from the office. 4. The children will sleep outdoors this night.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

НАСТОЯЩЕЕ ДЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ ВРЕМЯ THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Answer the following questions:

Model: Is he reading a story / a novel / a book of poetry? – He is reading a novel.

1. Is he opening the book / the copy-book / the bag?
2. Are they shutting the door / the window / the box?
3. Are you standing in the lobby / in the corner of the room / in the middle of the classroom?
4. Is he taking a pencil out of the bag / the copy-book out of the drawer / the pen out of the box?
5. Are you telling the time / the date / the truth?
6. Are they going to school / to the University / to the cinema?
7. Is he writing a dictation / a test / an exercise?
8. Is she working at the report / the article / the book?
9. Are they listening to music / the news / the song?
10. Is he looking for a book / a bag / a pair of gloves?

Ex. 2. Make up questions using the following sentences and give answers to them.

Model: Open the text-book. – What are you doing? I am opening the book.

1. read the text
2. count the chairs
3. take the pencil from your neighbour
4. shut the door
5. leave the classroom
6. say the dialogue
7. drill the exercise
8. hang the map
9. open the window
10. eat the soup

Ex. 3. Say several sentences about what your friend (group mate, neighbour, mother, father, sister, brother etc.) is doing now.

E.g. My friend is listening to music now.

Ex. 4. Say several sentences about what your friend (group mate, neighbour, mother, father, sister, brother etc.) is not doing now.

E.g. My friend is not smoking now.

Ex. 5. Put the verb in brackets in the Present Continuous Tense:

1. My mother (to cook) dinner now.
2. His sister (to play) computer games now.
3. She (to write) a composition at the moment.
4. They (to plant) trees in the garden now.
5. Her granny (to knit) now.
6. The child (to sleep) at the moment.
7. I (to paint) a picture now.
8. She (to cross) the street now.
9. He (to drink) beer at the moment.
10. She (to cross) the street now.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 6. Answer the following questions:

1. Is she opening the door or the window?
2. Are they talking about football or tennis?
3. Is she sitting at the table or by the window?
4. Is he working at the article or at the book?
5. Is she writing an exercise or a test?
6. Are they watching TV or listening to music?
7. Is he standing at the blackboard or at the window?
8. Is your granny sleeping or reading?
9. Are they playing football or watching TV?
10. Are you eating soup or drinking tea?

Ex. 7. Finish the following sentences:

Model: I am reading the text now... – I am reading the text now and he is doing the exercise.

1. We are sitting in class and they
2. He is learning history and she
3. They are working at the library and you
4. I am explaining the rule to you and you
5. We are listening to the story and you
6. The teacher is writing on the blackboard and the students
7. They are playing tennis in the garden and he
8. My mother is making coffee in the kitchen and my father
9. The teacher is telling a story and the pupils
10. We are learning the poem and they

Ex. 8. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Continuous or the Present Indefinite Tense:

1. He (to want) to buy a new suit.
2. Mother (to be) in the kitchen, she (to make) some cakes.
3. He (to drink) coffee every morning.
4. They (to do) their shopping in the afternoon.
5. It (to rain). Put on your raincoat.

6. Children (to like) to play with the sand.
7. He (to read) a newspaper; he always (to read) it at breakfast.
8. Where you (to go) now? – I (to go) to the cinema. I (to go) there every week.
9. I always (to meet) him at the corner of the street.
10. Bad students never (to work) hard.
11. He usually (to go) to bed very late.
12. What a smell! I expect something (to burn).
13. It (to snow) in winter. It (to snow) now.
14. He (to go) to the north every year for holidays.
15. What she (to do)? –She (to cook) supper.

Ex. 9. Answer the following questions:

1. Are you watching TV? When do you watch it?
2. Do you speak English? Are you speaking English now?
3. Are you smiling now? Why?
4. Does he teach you English? Is he teaching you at present?
5. Are you laughing? When do people laugh?
6. Are you washing up? When do you wash up?
7. Are you singing now? When do you sing?
8. Are you hurrying anywhere? When do people hurry?
9. Are you speaking French now? When do you speak French?
10. Are you making notes just now? Do you make notes at the lectures?

**ПРОШЕДШЕЕ ДЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ ВРЕМЯ
THE PAST CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE**

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 10. Answer the questions using the Past Continuous Tense in your sentences:

1. Where were you going when I met you yesterday?
2. What were you telling him when I was passing by?
3. Where were you driving your mother at 3 o'clock yesterday?
4. What were you working at when I saw you in the reading-room?

5. Who were you speaking to when I came in?
6. What were you doing from 5 till 7 yesterday?
7. What were you laughing at when I saw you some hours ago?
8. What were you doing in the kitchen when I rang you up?
9. What were you doing when I saw you in the canteen?
10. What were you doing at the laboratory at 3 o'clock yesterday?

Ex. 11. Finish the sentences using the words in brackets. Put the verbs in the Past Continuous Tense.

1. When I saw her ... (she, to write exercises)
2. When I saw him ... (he, to come out of the shop)
3. When I came into the room ... (they, to sit round the table)
4. When mother came in ... (the girls, to try on the hats)
5. When I went out ... (the sun, to shine)
6. When I met him yesterday ... (he, to hurry along the street)
7. When I went out ... (it, to rain)
8. When the teacher came in ... (the students, to discuss the news)
9. When the telephone rang up ... (she, to cook meals)
10. When she came into the room ... (the child, to eat plums)

Ex. 12. Read the text. Find the sentences in the Past Continuous and answer the questions:

The two children have been to London. They were astonished at the crowds everywhere. They were travelling on the Tube railway and going down the moving stairs which lead to the platforms. They found that they had to be quick and get on the train or it would go off without them.

One day they went to Hyde Park and walked along on the grass to Kensington Gardens in bright autumn sunshine. This was very different from the crowded street, and Mary said it was like being back in the country. The leaves on the great trees were turning red, brown and yellow, birds were flying about, sheep were eating the grass, there were lots of flowers and ducks were swimming about on the Round Pond. Only the noise from the streets in the distance reminded them of the town.

(From "A Direct Method English Course" by Gatenby)

1. Where were the children travelling, when they were in London?
2. Were they going down the moving stairs?
3. Where did they go one day?
4. What did they watch when they were walking along on the grass of Kensington Gardens?

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 13. Open the brackets using the Past Continuous Tense:

1. The train (to pull) out of the station when I appeared on the platform.
2. She (to pack) the suitcase when I entered the room.
3. The cat (to wait) on the doorstep when I came in.
4. When I came back, the cat (to sit) on the kitchen table and (to eat) the stake you brought for dinner.
5. The children (to do) their homework when their father came in.
6. It (to rain) this morning when I went out.
7. The light went out when we (to have) supper.
8. They (to dance) at the far end of the room when I entered.
9. The fire still (to burn) at 6 o'clock in the morning.
10. He (to walk) round the corner when his hat blew off.

Ex. 14. Put the verbs in brackets in the Past Indefinite or Past Continuous:

1. My friend (to come) to see me yesterday.
2. When he (to cross) the road, he slipped and fell.
3. Who (to tell) you to come to see me?
4. At six o'clock yesterday I (to wait) for you near the cinema.
5. We (to walk) to the station when it (to begin) to rain.
6. I (to forget) to wind the clock last night.
7. I (to know) him quite well when I (to be) young.
8. As she (to listen) to the radio she couldn't understand my question.
9. When I came, my cat (to sleep) in my armchair.
10. While he (to read) a book the telephone (to ring); as he (to go) to answer the call, he (to hear) a knock at the door; the telephone still (to ring) while he (to walk) to the door, but just as he (to open) it, it (to stop).

Ex. 15. Open the brackets using the Past Continuous or the Past Indefinite. Retell the text.

Yesterday, as I (to walk) down the street, I (to meet) George, an old friend of mine. He (to recognize) me at once, though I (to wear) a scarf round my face as I (to suffer) from toothache. He (to tell) me how sorry he was to see me in such a poor way and (to add): “I (to come) to see you a fortnight ago but unfortunately we (to prepare) the annual accounts and as one of my colleagues (to be) ill, I couldn’t find time to get round to you.” All the time he (to say) this I (to try to remember) and (to say) to him: “Just before I (to come) out, I (to receive) a letter from Smith, in which he (to say) that he (to hope) you would call on him soon. He last (to see) you at Marion’s birthday party but you (to talk) so animatedly to one of her guests that he (not to dare) interrupt. Just then I (to see) another friend of mine: he (to wave) to me from the other side of the road. I (to say) goodbye to George and (to start) to cross the road. While I (to cross), the car (to rush) out from nowhere and (to knock) me down. Luckily, I (to fall) into an open crate of bananas, which a barrow-boy (to sell) so I (to sustain) no great injury – through the bananas (to do)!”

Ex. 16. Use the correct form of the verbs given in brackets. Learn the poem.

SURPRISE PARTY

When I (to reach) my house at eleven,
Max (to play) the guitar,
Jane (to sit) at the table
Eating pickles from the jar.
Ted (to sit) at the piano,
Playing sonatas to Louise.
And my parrot Paul (to sing)
All the songs and melodies.
Bob (to sleep) under the table,
He (cannot) even stay awake,
And my dog (to be) in the kitchen
Eating off the birthday cake.

БУДУЩЕЕ ДЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ ВРЕМЯ
THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS (PROGRESSIVE) TENSE

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 17. Answer the questions using the Future Continuous Tense:

1. What will you be doing tomorrow?
2. What will your sister be doing from 2 till 3 tomorrow?
3. What will your mother be cooking at 6 o'clock tomorrow?
4. What will the students be reading in class tomorrow?
5. What will you be talking about when I meet you in the corridor?
6. Will your family be having supper when you come home?
7. Will you be working hard at your report next term?
8. Will he be working hard or having a rest at 5 o'clock?
9. Where will he be travelling in a fortnight?
10. When will he be repairing his car?

Ex. 18. Finish the sentences using the Future Continuous Tense:

1. When I come home my mother (to cook)
2. When she sees her she (to come out)
3. When they return home the children (to do homework)
4. When mother cooks meals she (to clean)
5. When I come home my husband (to rest)
6. When she finishes the work she (to look after)
7. When he comes home his aunt (to play)
8. When we return home they (to have supper)
9. When I ring her up she (to look for)
10. When they get tickets they (to fly)

Ex. 19. Finish the sentences using the word combinations from the box:

to cook dinner	to help mother
to clean the room	to read the newspaper
to listen to music	to take a shower
to take exams	to buy food
to go to the country	to talk on the phone

1. At 5 o'clock tomorrow ...
2. Tomorrow ...
3. I'm going ...
4. From 3 till 6 tomorrow ...
5. At 8 o'clock tomorrow ...
6. When I come ...
7. Tomorrow from 7 till 8 ...
8. He is going ...
9. When he comes ...
10. Next week ...

Ex. 20. Open the brackets using the Future Continuous or the Future Indefinite:

1. I (to wait) for you at the hotel at midday tomorrow.
2. I wonder, what you (to do) tomorrow?
3. What you (to do) at 5 o'clock next week? – I (to work) hard.
4. They (to have) coffee after dinner.
5. I (to see) you again in 2 weeks.
6. I'll come at 2 o'clock. – Ok, I (to expect) you.
7. On the first of September the students (to come back) to the University.
8. He (to wait) for me till I (to return).
9. He (to drive) to town at this very hour tomorrow.
10. I (to return) home at noon tomorrow. What you (to do) at this time?

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 21. Put the sentences into the Future Continuous or Future Indefinite:

1. She talks on the phone every evening.
2. They play chess every Sunday.
3. They do shopping every weekend.
4. They play volleyball on the sports ground every week.
5. He watches TV in the evening.

6. She is taking a shower now.
7. They are discussing his report.
8. We are reading a new article on English Art now.
9. She is listening to your favourite song now.
10. They are painting a new landscape now.

Ex. 22. Make up the sentences according to the model:

Model: He will get tickets in the evening. We shall fly to London. →
 If he gets tickets, we shall be flying to London at 7 o'clock in the evening.

1. The weather will be fine noon. The children will go on the trip.
2. Peter will come to see us at 5 o'clock. We'll play chess.
3. Mother will not allow us to go to the cinema in the evening. We'll watch the film on television.
4. The wind will blow from the west in the morning. It will rain.
5. I'll see her at 5 o'clock. She will prepare for the conference.
6. I'll finish the work at noon. She will wait for me.
7. The mother will come at 6. The children will do their homework.
8. He comes at 8. I'll wait for him.
9. She comes in time. We'll have dinner.
10. I'll get up early tomorrow. We'll drive to the railway station.

Ex. 23. Put the sentences into the Future Continuous, Future Indefinite or Present Indefinite:

1. I (to wait) for you in the park at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
2. - What you (to do) from 5 till 7 tomorrow?
 - I (to clean) the room.
3. - What you (to do) next Saturday?
 - I (to celebrate) my birthday.
4. I (to ring) you up next week.
5. If you (to come) in time we (to catch) the train.
6. He (to write) a composition from 6 till 8 tomorrow.
7. I (to do) shopping at this time tomorrow.
8. If the weather (to be) fine I (to go) for a walk with my dog.
9. From 5 till 8 tomorrow they (to prepare) for the party.
10. If he (to get) tickets we (to go) to the theatre tonight.

Ex. 24. Make up 10 sentences describing what your friends or relatives will be doing at a certain moment in the future.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 25. Fill in the correct form of the verb “to be”:

1. Bill ... trying to improve his English.
2. I ... taking five courses this term.
3. She ... writing another book this year.
4. John and Mary ... talking on the phone.
5. I need an umbrella because it ... raining.
6. We ... walking down the street when it began to rain.
7. It was beautiful yesterday when we went out for a walk, it ... not raining, the sun ... shining.
8. I couldn't get you on the phone last night, who ... you talking to so long?
9. What ... you doing at 6 tomorrow?
10. We ... playing chess in half an hour.
11. She ... listening to her favourite music at 8 o'clock tomorrow.
12. What ... you ... doing when I come?

Ex. 26. Put questions to the underlined words:

1. Father is watching TV.
2. My brother is sitting at the table.
3. He is reading a newspaper.
4. I am talking to my friend about our new car.
5. It was raining hard last night. A strong wind was blowing.
6. They were leaving the house when we arrived.
7. Nelly will be doing her homework tomorrow morning.
8. I'll be waiting for you at 10 o'clock in the morning.
9. We are going to the Crimea in summer.
10. They were listening to a funny story.

Ex. 27. Make up disjunctive questions:

1. We are having a break now.
2. She is thinking about tomorrow's conference.

3. The clock was striking 10 when I came.
4. We were writing a test from 2 till 4.
5. Ann was looking for her cat in the garden.
6. Everybody was waiting for their arrival.
7. I am trying to explain it to you.
8. I'll be ringing you tomorrow morning.
9. He won't be staying here long.
10. I was not walking with my dog at that time.

Ex. 28. Find and correct fifteen mistakes in the spelling of the following present participles.

copying, putting, translateing, telling, closing, sitting, seing, giving, meetting, being, forgetting, being, getting, fliing, swimming, betting, quitting, spreadding, eating, begining, paing, openning, cutting, forbiding, laying, splitting, winning, dying, stoping

Ex. 29. Open the brackets and put the verb into the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous Tense.

1. Be quiet, please. We (work) at the translation and you (make) a lot of noise.
2. He always (go) for a walk in the evening.
3. Where is Jack? — He (meet) his girlfriend at the station. She (come) at 12 o'clock.
4. She (cry). Is something wrong?
5. In the morning I (have) little time, so I (take) a shower in the evening.
6. A decade (describe) a period of ten years.
7. Her brother (work) in Canada at present.
8. She always (dream) but (do) nothing to realize her dreams.
9. He (be) so suspicious to me at the moment. I wonder why.
10. Hurry up, Jane! We all (wait) for you.
11. Turn off the gas. Don't you see the kettle (boil)?
12. The children are still ill but they (get) better gradually.
13. Don't bother her. She (take) her French lesson. She always (take) it in the morning.
14. The living standards (change). Every month things (get) more expensive.

15. Tom and Mary (leave) for the Netherlands tomorrow.
16. I have just started English courses. I (study) English grammar.
17. Mercury (boil) at 357.25 degrees Centigrade.
18. We must buy new plates. — It's useless. You always (break) plates.
19. It (surprise) me that they can't sell their flat.
20. A woman who (look) after other people's children is a nanny.

Ex. 30. Correct the verbs in bold type, if the tenses are wrong.

1. The clock **is striking**, it's time to finish your studies.
2. They **are understanding** the problem now.
3. Where is John? — He **prepares** his lessons; he usually **prepares** them at that time.
4. They are glad to know that their son **is coming** home next week.
5. The evening is warm, but you **are shivering**. What is the matter? — Nothing serious, I **am feeling** cold.
6. Can I see Mr. Green? — I am sorry, you can't. He **has** dinner.
7. The soup **is tasting** delicious.
8. Now I **am seeing** what you **are driving** at.
9. He **believes** in God and **is** always **going** to church on Sundays.
10. I **am hating** to speak to him. He **is** always **complaining and forgetting what to do**.
11. They **are being** so nice to me at present. I **am feeling** they **are liking** me.
12. He often **changes** his political views. Now he **is belonging** to the Conservative Party.
13. Look! Somebody **tries** to open your car.
14. Oh, I won't take this dish. It **is smelling** awful.
15. How can I recognize him? I haven't met him. — He **is wearing** a yellow leather jacket and green jeans.
16. She usually **drinks** tea in the morning, but today she **drinks** coffee.
17. The last train **is leaving** the station at 11.50.
18. He **is wanting** to buy a car, but first he must learn to drive, so he **is taking** his driving lessons.
19. I can't stand him. He **is liking** to mock at people. He **is** always **laughing** at us when we meet.

20. Don't laugh at lessons, you **are** always **laughing** too much and the teachers **are** usually **complaining** of you.

Ex. 31. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Continuous or Present Indefinite:

1. We (to go) to the seaside every summer.
2. She can't come to the phone. She (to wash) her hair.
3. Where (to be) Kate? She usually (to sit) in the front row. I (not to know) why she (to sit) here now.
4. Please, be quiet! The baby (to sleep).
5. What you (to laugh) at?
6. The countryside (to be) wonderful especially when it (to snow).
7. Why you (to smoke) here? – And where people usually (to smoke) in this building?
8. Listen! Somebody (to knock) at the door?
9. How often you (to wash) your dog?
10. Look! Your granny (to cross) the street.

Ex. 32. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Continuous or Past Indefinite:

1. When the taxi (to arrive) I still (to pack) my things.
2. What you (to do) in the evening yesterday? – I (to watch) TV and my wife (to read).
3. I (to do) all the exercises while you (to smoke).
4. She (to wear) a marvelous new dress at the party and (to look) fantastic.
5. He (to wait) for her for an hour but she never (to come).
6. When John (to come) home his friend (to wait) for him.
7. When we (to arrive) to St. Petersburg it (to rain).
8. While I (to clean) the room my friend (to cook) dinner.
9. He (to hurt) his leg when he (to play) football.
10. When the telephone (to ring) I (to bake) a cake and (to ask) Mary who (to do) nothing at the moment to answer the call.

Ex. 33. Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Continuous:

1. At this time tomorrow we (to have) an English class.
2. When you (to come) they (to train) in the gym.
3. While you (to be) away we (to look) after your children.
4. Don't leave! We (to have) tea in a few minutes.
5. It (to rain) all this time tomorrow.
6. As far as I know you (to paint) from 9 till 12 tomorrow morning.
7. While I (to cook) at this time tomorrow you (to do) your homework.
8. Don't wait for me! I (to work) for some time.
9. Let's hurry! The film (to start) in a minute.

Ex. 34. Open the brackets using the Continuous or Indefinite Tenses:

1. I (to think) of what he (to tell) me yesterday.
2. He (to think) he (to remember) his cousin.
3. The coffee (to taste) wonderful.
4. They (to have) a new car. I (to think) they (to have) a good time now.
5. My sister (to taste) a cake. She (to say) it (to taste) delicious.
6. Why you (to look) at me. – Because you (to look) very much like my sister.
7. I (to feel) much better today.
8. This sweater (to feel) soft and warm.
9. What you (to do) while I (to clean) the room?
10. I (to work) in the garden when it (to begin) raining.
11. I (to do) shopping at this time tomorrow.
12. He (to walk) in the park at this time tomorrow.
13. What (to smell) so good? – I (to cook) mushroom soup.
14. What you (to do) at this time yesterday?
15. What you (to listen) to?

Ex. 35. Make up stories using the Continuous Tenses.

A. Look out of the window and say what you can see and hear.

Model: It is raining. People are hurrying up and down the street ...

B. Imagine that you were at the party yesterday. Say what the guests were doing when you came.

Ex. 36. Choose the correct answer:

1. Look at these children. They ... very well.
a) skate b) skates c) are skating
2. We ... the whole day last Sunday.
a) skied b) will ski c) were skiing
3. What you ... now?
a) are you doing b) do c) does
4. Tomorrow at 5 o'clock we ... a very interesting lecture.
a) will listen b) will be listing c) are listening
5. Every day boss ... the office at 9 o'clock.
a) enters b) enter c) is entering
6. My friend .. me up at 8 o'clock yesterday.
a) rings b) was ringing c) rang
7. She ... home after 7 o'clock.
a) will return b) returns c) return
8. When he ... we ... dinner.
a) comes, will have b) will come, have c) come, is having
9. Yesterday from 6 till 7 they ... to London.
a) were flying b) flied c) flies
10. Nick ... to bed at 10 o'clock yesterday.
a) went b) was going c) goes

Ex. 37. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

- 1) Какие времена входят в группу Continuous?
- 2) Назовите общую формулу образования времен группы Continuous?
- 3) Какие формы имеет глагол to be в настоящем, прошедшем и будущем времени?
- 4) Как образуется причастие настоящего времени?
- 5) Какие особенности правописания имеют причастия настоящего времени?

6) Как образуется вопросительная и отрицательная формы времен группы Continuous?

7) Как образуется и когда употребляется the Present Continuous Tense?

8) Как образуется и когда употребляется the Past Continuous Tense?

9) Как образуется и когда употребляется the Future Continuous Tense?

10) Назовите основные различия в употреблении The Present Continuous Tense и the Present Indefinite Tense?

UNIT 9. ГРУППА СОВЕРШЕННЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE PERFECT GROUP OF TENSES)

Времена группы Perfect (действие, завершившееся к определенному моменту):

настоящее совершенное время — the Present Perfect,

прошедшее совершенное время — the Past Perfect,

будущее совершенное время — the Future Perfect,

будущее совершенное в прошедшем — the Future Perfect in the Past.

Глаголы во временных формах группы Perfect обозначают действия, которые были завершены (или — в случае сказуемого в отрицательной форме — не завершены) к настоящему моменту (Present Perfect), к определенному моменту в прошлом (Past Perfect), а также будут завершены или не завершены к определенному моменту в будущем (Future Perfect).

Времена этой группы образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **have** и смыслового глагола в форме причастия прошедшего времени Participle II. По временам (настоящее, прошедшее, будущее, будущее в прошедшем) изменяется глагол “**have**”, прочие элементы остаются без изменений. Форма причастия прошедшего времени Participle II (третья форма глагола) для правильных глаголов совпадает с формой прошедшего времени Past Simple и образуется с помощью

окончания –“ed”. Форма причастия II (третья форма глагола) для неправильных глаголов образуется особым образом, ее необходимо заучить наизусть!

Глаголы, употребляемые в одном из времен группы Perfect обычно переводятся на русский язык глаголами совершенного вида.

НАСТОЯЩЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE)

В английском языке существует особая форма настоящего времени, когда говорят о действии, уже завершившемся к моменту разговора, результат действия которого имеется налицо в настоящем времени. Эта временная форма - **Present Perfect**.

☺ **Утвердительная форма** the Present Perfect образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**have**” в форме настоящего времени (have, has) и третьей формы смыслового глагола, или причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II).

E.g. I have already done my work.

She has just arrived.

☺ **Вопросительная форма** образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**have**” в форме настоящего времени (have, has) и третьей формы смыслового глагола, или причастия прошедшего времени Participle II, причем вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. Have you seen them today?

Has she finished her report?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** the Present Perfect образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола “**have**” в форме настоящего времени (have, has) частицы “**not**” и третьей формы смыслового глагола, или причастия прошедшего времени (Participle II).

E.g. They have not (haven't) done these exercises.

He has not (hasn't) achieved excellent results.

The Present Perfect Tense употребляется:

* для выражения совершенного действия, своим результатом связанного с настоящим временем, при этом время совершения действия неизвестно или не имеет значения:

E.g. Mother has cooked supper. (Supper is cooked)

Father has come home. (Father is at home)

* с наречиями неопределенного времени:

already

lately

just

recently

ever

yet

never

E.g. I have just finished my report.

Have you ever been to London? – I have never been to London.

* если действие уже совершилось, а период времени еще не закончился (обычно с наречиями today, this week (month/year)

E.g. We have seen her today. (But: I saw her yesterday.)

* с предлогом/союзом **“since”** (с/с тех пор как), **“for”** (в течение какого-то времени). В случае придаточного предложения времени, вводимого с помощью союза **“since”**, глагол-сказуемое придаточного предложения употребляется в простом прошедшем времени (Past Indefinite/Simple):

E.g. I have not seen him since last year.

I have not seen him since he left school.

I have not seen him for a long time.

* для выражения действия, начавшегося в прошлом и продолжающегося до настоящего момента (с глаголами, не употребляющимися в форме Continuous). В этом случае глагол в форме Present Perfect переводится на русский язык, как правило, глаголом в настоящем времени:

E.g. I have known her since 2005.

She has had this dog for two years already.

Сравните употребление **the Present Perfect** и **the Past Indefinite**:

Present Perfect	Past Indefinite
<p>Выражает законченное действие, совершившееся до момента речи, но имеющее с ним непосредственную связь, которая может выражаться</p> <p>* в виде конкретного результата действия к моменту речи;</p> <p>* в виде указания на период времени, включающего настоящий момент, поэтому Present Perfect никогда не употребляется, если есть точное указание времени в прошлом.</p>	<p>Выражает действие, которое произошло в прошлом (ранее настоящего момента) и употребляется тогда, когда есть точное указание времени в прошлом.</p>
<p>1. Has he come yet? Он уже пришел?</p> <p>2. Have you been to any museum lately? Вы были в каком-нибудь музее за последнее время?</p> <p>3. I have never been to London. Я никогда не был в Лондоне.</p> <p>4. I have already seen the new film. Я уже видел новый фильм.</p>	<p>1. When did he come? Когда он пришел?</p> <p>2. I was in this museum a few days ago. Я был в этом музее несколько дней тому назад.</p> <p>3. Last year he was in London. В прошлом году он был в Лондоне.</p> <p>4. I saw the new film last night. Я видел новый фильм вчера вечером.</p>

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Read and translate the sentences. Make them negative and interrogative.

1. He has bought a new bike. 2. I've sent a letter to my friend. 3. She has made a very bad mistake. 4. The children have gone to bed. 5. I have seen a mouse in the kitchen. 6. We've met our business partners. 7. I've lost my student identity card. 8. They have cleaned their rooms. 9. The tourists have visited the National Gallery. 10. The teacher has checked our tests. 11. Harry has broken his car. 12. I've forgotten his phone number. 13. They have left for Rome. 14. Mary has seen this film. 15. We have read this detective story. 16. He has taken my credit card.

Ex. 2. Put the words given in brackets in the proper place.

1. The lesson has begun. (just) 2. The boys have come back home. (already) 3. Mother has told me about it. (never) 4. They have left for London. (just) 5. John has written five letters. (already) 6. It has happened to me. (never) 7. They have got up now. (probably) 8. We have seen this film. (already) 9. The children have understood everything. (certainly) 10. My friend has done these exercises. (often)

Ex. 3. Use the verbs in brackets in short forms of the Present Perfect. Retell the jokes.

A. A young man came to his neighbour who did not wish to see him. The servant opened the door and said, "I'm sorry, sir, but Master (to go) out." "Well," the man answered, "I'll wait for him, I'll just sit by the fire." "I'm afraid that's impossible, sir," the servant answered, "because the fire (to go) out too." (*заснуть*)

B. Mark Twain was once sitting in the opera house next to a young lady who talked to him all the time, so that he couldn't hear the music. After the performance was over she invited him to the opera "Carmen" on the following Friday. Mark Twain answered politely, "With pleasure, madam, I never (to hear) you in Carmen yet."

Ex. 4. Open the brackets using the correct form of the verbs.

a) 1. Jack (pass) the interview and he's very happy. 2. I'm afraid the manager not (come) yet. 3. Thank you for everything that you (do) for us. 4. I already (study) the telexes from Paris and I (write) the answers. 5. I'm afraid he (forget) that you are waiting for him. 6. You (have) dinner yet? 7. I not (see) my boss this week. He (fall ill). 8. They just (call) and (invite) us to lunch. 9. - Where is Mr. Green? - He (go) to the bank. 10. My little cousin already (learn) to read. 11. No news (come) yet from our office in London. 12. Someone (eat) all the cakes and I not even (taste) one! 13. Remember that your children already (grow up). 14. This Hollywood star (live) a long and interesting life. 15. I not (look through) my favourite magazine yet. 16. My mother (throw away) the yogurt. It's too old. 17. I (cut) my finger badly. It hurts. 18. She already (make) different sandwiches for lunch. They

are on the plates. 19. She (be) very lonely lately. 20. We not (meet) recently. We (be) very busy lately.

b) 1. You ever (speak) in front of a large audience? 2. I never (be) in Africa, but my friend just (come) back from there. 3. They (be) partners for many years but they never (trust) each other. 4. You ever (ride) s motorbike? 5. Let's talk, we never (discuss) such matters seriously. 6. We never (meet) better people than you are! You are the best! 7. You ever (travel) in the mountains? 8. I never (grow) roses in my garden. 9. - You (try) this pie? I (cook) it myself! - I never (taste) anything more delicious. 10. We are a team. We never (let down) one another. 11. I (learn) a lot in the last months. 12. - Just listen! She (fall in love)! - Who with?

Ex. 5. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Simple.

1. - When you (be) at the theatre last? - I (go) there two weeks ago. 2. - You ever (be) at the Bolshoi Theatre? - No, I not (be) there yet. 3. The Chinese (invent) many useful things. 4. Just listen to him! He again (invent) another story. 5. My boss just (offer) me another job. 6. I can't find my new disc. I'm afraid I (lose) it. 7. I was very much upset when I (lose) my new mobile phone. 8. They (get married) in Las Vegas. 9. They are very happy. They just (get married). 10. She (go) out an hour ago and not (come) back yet. 11. He not (be) at work yesterday. He (be) unwell. 12. He not (come) to work today. He (be) unwell lately. 13. I (speak) to him the other day. 14. I not (speak) to him today. 15. It (happen) many years ago. 16. Nothing (change) in my life recently. 17. My secretary (call) me just now. 18. You not (make) any progress so far. 19. Life (be) kind to me up till now. 20. Life (be) hard for him when he was a child.

Ex. 6. Answer the questions.

1. When and where were you born? 2. When did you begin to walk and to speak? 3. When did you go to school? 4. Who was your first teacher? 5. When did you first fall in love? 6. When did you first see the sea? Where was it? 7. When did you start learning English? 8. When did you enter the University? 9. When was the last time you went to the cinema? 10. When was your last visit to the theatre? 11. When was the last time you went to a party? 12. When did you last talk frankly to your parents?

Ex. 7. Use the correct form of the verb in the brackets.

1. She is an intelligent girl, but she not (read) a book since she (leave) school. 2. I (buy) an electronic organizer today, and I just (type) my personal data into it. 3. Her solo album already (sell) a million copies. She is happy. 4. This doctor's methods (show) good results recently. 5. So much (happen) since I last (see) you. 6. - You ever (be) to Norway? - Yes, I (go) there on business last year. 7. - You (miss) a lecture recently? - I (miss) one a week ago. 8. Success not (spoil) her. She simply (become) more sure of herself. 9. I (have) a video for some years but I not (manage) to learn the instructions. 10. We not (have fun) for a long time. We (have) our last party a month ago. 11. - How long Lucy (have) problems with her back? - It first (start) last year. 12. We (be engaged) since we (leave) high school. 13. - You always (have) a dog? - I (have) it for the last six years. 14. - Guess what I (decide) to do! - I can't guess. What? - I (decide) to start my own business. - When you (decide) to do it? - I (think) about it just now. 15. It not (rain) here for a very long time. 16. Yesterday all your troubles (seem) so far away. Today the thieves (take) your car away!

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 8. Use the Present Perfect in the following sentences.

1. John (write) his name. 2. I (draw) a picture. 3. Tom (blow out) the light. 4. The cat (drink) its milk. 5. The tree (fall) across the road. 6. John (give) his bicycle to his brother. 7. You (make) a mistake. 8. We (eat) our dinner. 9. The train just (go). 10. I just (tell) the answer. 11. George never (be) in Australia. 12. John and Richard just (go away). 13. The baker (sell) all his cakes. 14. I (read) this book.

Ex. 9. Read and translate the sentences. Make them negative and interrogative.

1. Jack has washed the dog. 2. Father has already cleaned his car. 3. Mr. Snowdon has made a speech at the conference. 4. Granny has bought me some cakes. 5. They have painted their old house. 6. Liz has bought some flowers. 7. My sister has just cooked breakfast for the family. 8. The cat has

already eaten fish. 9. Mrs. Gray has gone to London. 10. I have never been to India. 11. She has just broken a vase. 12. We have cleaned the room. 13. Chris has phoned his friend. 14. The train has just arrived. 15. It has just started to rain. 16. Kelly has gone to America. 17. We have left our books to school. 18. The street has changed a lot. 19. You have worked here for a long time. 20. Mandy has been to Greece.

Ex. 10. Fill in the table.

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Indefinite	Перевод
to write			
to draw			
to blow			
to drink			
to fall			
to give			
to make			
to eat			
to go			
to tell			
to be			
to have			
to sell			
to read			
to buy			
to break			
to leave			

Ex. 11. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect. Retell the fairy-tale.

The Wolf and the Crane

Once, when the Wolf was eating, a small bone got in his throat. He ran to the Crane and asked him, ‘Please, help me. A bone (to get) in my throat. I will give you anything if you take this bone out.’ The Crane put its head into the Wolf’s mouth and took the bone out. Then the Crane said, ‘Well, I (to do) what you (to ask) me to do. Will you now do what you (to promise) me?’ The Wolf laughed loudly and answered, ‘Be happy, silly animal, that

I (not to eat) you. You (to put) your head in a wolf's mouth, and you (to take) it out safely. I (to give) you life. What else do you want?'

Ex. 12. The Past Simple or the Present Perfect?

1) Jill (buy) a new car two weeks ago. 2) His hair is very short. He (have) a hair cut. 3) Last night I (arrive) home at half past twelve. I (have) a bath and then I (go) to bed. 4) You (visit) many museums when you were in Paris? 5) My bicycle isn't here any more. Somebody (take) it. 6) When you (give) up smoking? 7) I (not eat) anything yesterday because I (not feel) hungry. 8) Why Jim (not want) to play tennis last Friday? 9) The car looks clean. You (washed) it? 10) How many times you (be) ill this year? 11) Mr. Clark (work) in a bank for 15 years. Then he gave up. 12) The weather (be) very nice recently. Don't you think so? 13) Hello Susan. Is Alan here? - No, I'm afraid he (go) out. - Oh, what a pity! When exactly he (go) out. - About ten minutes ago.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 13. Complete the dialogues using the Present Perfect or Past Simple.

A: I (see) Jack last night.

B: Oh really. I (not see) him for months. How is he?

A: We (go) to the theatre last Saturday.

B: You (enjoy) the play?

A: Yes, it (be) very good.

A: I never (hear) of this group before. Are they famous in your country?

B: Yes, they are very popular. They (be) famous in my country for years.

A: What you (do) last weekend?

B: I (stay) at home. I (need) a rest.

A: You ever (win) a competition?

B: Yes, I (win) a photographic competition in 2001.

A: So, John is your best friend. You (meet) him when you were at the university?

B: Yes. We (be) friends for more than ten years.

Ex. 14. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Simple.

1. Helen speaks French so well because she (to live) in France. 2. She (to live) there last year. 3. Mary (to buy) a new hat. 4. I (to buy) a pair of gloves yesterday. 5. The weather (to change), and we can go for a walk. 6. The wind (to blow) off the man's hat, and he cannot catch it. 7. We (to travel) around Europe last year. 8. My father knows so much because he (to travel) a lot. 9. I (to see) Pete today. 10. She (to see) this film last Sunday. 11. Yesterday they (to decide) to help their grandmother. 12. I (not to see) you for a long time. 13. Last night I (to feel) tired and (to go) to bed very early. 14. You ever (to spend) your holidays in the Crimea? 15. While travelling in the Crimea, I (to meet) your friend. 16. I never (to visit) the USA. 17. He (to visit) the USA last year. He (to work) and (to travel) there. 18. I just (to get) a letter by e-mail from my sister. 19. She (to be) abroad five years ago. 20. I (not yet to eat) today. 21. He (to be) nervous and (not to eat) yesterday. 22. Look at this birdhouse! Mike (to make) it himself. He make it last Sunday. 23. When you (to see) Mary? - I (to see) her last week. 24. Look at my new dress! I (to make) it myself. 25. He just (to come) home. 26. He (to come) home a minute ago. 27. She just (to go) out. 28. She (to leave) the room a moment ago. 29. Oh, close the window! Look, all my papers (to fall) on the floor because of the wind. 30. When you (to open) the window? -I (to open) it ten minutes ago. 31. It (to be) very cold yesterday. 32. When you (to meet) him? I (not to see) him since 2005.

Ex. 15. Complete the text about London underground by putting in the *Present Perfect* or *Past Simple* forms the verbs in brackets.

THE LONDON UNDERGROUND

London (have) an underground train system since the nineteenth century. The London Underground (start) in 1863, when Victorian engineers and workers (build) the Metropolitan railway. This railway line (go) from

Paddington Station to Farringdon Street Station, and steam engines (pull) the coaches. Eleven more lines (open) since then. The world's first underground electric railway (open) in 1890. This line (go) from the City of London to Stockwell in South London. The most modern line is the Jubilee line, which (open) in 1979. Since the London Underground (begin), many other cities, such as New York and Moscow, (build) their own systems.

Ex. 16. Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite.

The Selfish Giant

One day the Giant (to go) to visit his friend, another Giant, and he (to stay) with him for seven years. When he (to return) home, he (to see) some children playing in his garden. 'This is my own garden, and I will not allow you to play here,' he said angrily. 'Of course, I (not to be) here for a long time, but it does not mean that the garden (to become) yours!' The children said, 'Oh, please, we (to be) so happy here all this time! We (not to do) any harm to your garden.' But the Giant was very selfish, and he (to build) a high wall round it.

Soon the Spring (to come), and with it (to come) birds and flowers, but in the garden of the Selfish Giant there (to be) snow and a cold wind. People (to say), 'Spring (to forget) this garden.' The giant himself never (to go) out of his garden, so he (to think) that it (to be) still winter everywhere. I cannot understand why the Spring (not to come) yet,' he said, 'Something (to go) wrong with the weather.'

After O. Wilde

Ex. 17. Choose the right variant.

1. Where ... yesterday?

a) was you b) you were c) were you d) did you be

2. They ... last week.

a) didn't come b) came not c) don't came d) didn't came

3. What ... doing at nine o'clock yesterday evening?
 a) Peter were b) Peter was c) did Peter d) was Peter
4. I didn't hear the phone because when it rang, I ... a shower.
 a) had b) was having c) have had d) having
5. My cousins ... seen a kangaroo.
 a) have never b) never have c) has never d) haven't never
6. Have you ... to Canada?
 a) ever been b) ever gone c) been ever d) gone ever
7. I'm sorry. Mrs. Johnson hasn't
 a) arrived just b) already arrived c) arrived already d) arrived yet
8. My husband and I ... to Edinburgh in 2001.
 a) have moved b) moved c) did moved d) has moved
9. I ... to London five times already this week.
 a) went b) have gone c) have been d) was going
10. When Carol was younger, she ... in a jazz band.
 a) use to sing b) sang usually c) was singing d) used to sing

ПРОШЕДШЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE PAST PERFECT TENSE)

☺ Утвердительная форма **Past Perfect** образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to have** в форме прошедшего времени (**had**) и формы причастия прошедшего времени (**Past Participle**) смыслового глагола:

E.g. I had worked, he had worked

☺ В **вопросительной форме** вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим: Had I worked? Had he worked?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы **not**, которая ставится после вспомогательного глагола:

E.g. I had not (hadn't) worked. He had not (hadn't) worked.

The Past Perfect Tense употребляется:

1) для выражения действия, совершившегося ранее другого действия в прошлом:

E.g. She showed me the dress that she had bought at a sale.

He had rung me up before he left home.

2) для выражения действия, завершившегося к определенному моменту времени в прошлом, при этом этот момент времени может быть выражен:

а) такими наречиями времени как **by 3 o'clock, by Saturday, by the 10th of December, by the end of the year**

E.g. I had translated the article by 3 o'clock.

в) придаточным предложением времени, в котором глагол употребляется в Past Simple:

E.g. I had translated the article by the time my mother returned home.

By the end of the year, he had learned to speak French.

Past Perfect часто употребляется в придаточных предложениях времени с союзами **after** (после того как) и **before** (прежде чем), что связано со значением союзов. использование Past Perfect подчеркивает, что действие одной части предложения совершено ранее действия другой части:

E.g. I had finished my work before they arrived.

After I had finished my work, they arrived.

We had read the book before we saw the film.

After we had read the book, we saw the film.

Два или несколько прошедших действий, передаваемых в той же последовательности, в которой они происходили, выражаются в

Past Simple, несмотря на то, что одни действия предшествовали другим:

E.g. He arrived at the station, took a taxi and drove to the hotel. Then he went to the post office and sent a telegramme to his wife.

БУДУЩЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ (THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE)

☺ Утвердительная форма **Future Perfect** образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **to have** в форме будущего времени (**shall have, will have**) и формы причастия прошедшего времени (**Past Participle**) смыслового глагола:

I shall (will) have worked, he will have worked

☺ В **вопросительной форме Future Perfect** первый вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим: Shall (Will) I have worked? Will he have worked?

☺ **Отрицательная форма Future Perfect** образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы **not**, которая ставится после первого вспомогательного глагола:

I shall not (shan't) have worked. He will not (won't) have worked.

The Future Perfect Tense употребляется:

1) для выражения действия, которое завершится ранее другого действия в будущем (при этом необходимо помнить, что в придаточных времени вместо Future Simple употребляется Present Simple:

I will have washed up before my mother comes.

2) для выражения действия, завершившегося к определенному моменту времени в будущем, при этом этот момент времени может быть выражен:

а) такими наречиями времени как **by 3 o'clock tomorrow, by next Saturday, by the 10th of December, by the end of the year**

E.g. I will have translated the article by 3 o'clock tomorrow.

b) придаточным предложением времени:

E.g. She will have finished the report by tomorrow.

She will have finished the report by the time the library closes.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Open the brackets by putting the verbs in brackets in the Past Perfect Tense.

1. She thought that Bill and Kate (to have) a quarrel. 2. By the time we came to see him, he (to return) home. 3. During the holidays my friend decided to visit the town where he (to live) before the war. 4. When they entered the hall the performance (to begin) already. 5. When I came home my wife told me that she (to get) a letter from her friends.

Ex. 2. Present Perfect or Past Perfect?

1. He looked at the man and understood he (see) him somewhere before. 2. The secretary asked who (break) her typewriter. 3. Look! Somebody (break) my typewriter. 4. They (buy) the pears in the market. 5. We wondered what they (do) since we last met. 6. My friends are hungry because they (have) nothing to eat since morning. 7. We just (walk) in the park. 8. When my parents came home they saw that someone (eat) the dinner. 9. Peter hoped there (be) no bad news since Sunday. 10. There (be) no bad news all this week.

Ex. 3. Open the brackets using Past Perfect or Past Indefinite.

1. He (to study) Spanish before he (to go) to Spain. 2. Bill (to say) to Ann that he (to get) his education in Oxford. 3. Jack (to want) to play the leading role in the play because he (to organize) the theatre. 4. Sam (to know) who (to attack) him in the darkness. 5. The girl (to be) happy that she (to find) the seat near the window. 6. Suddenly he (to remember) that he (not to call) her this evening. 7. By the time his parents (to come to see) him he (to make) friend with many friends. 8. After Mary (to leave) Paris Pete (to run) to the airport to buy a ticket.

Ex. 4. Open the brackets by putting the verbs in brackets in the Future Perfect Tense.

1. Professor Benton (to finish) the operation by three o'clock. 2. The birds (to fly) away before winter. 3. The secretary (to type) all the letters by the time the boss comes. 4. By the end of the term we (to read) two English novels. 5. Come tomorrow evening. By that time, I (record) the music. 6. By the end of next week Charles (to buy) a new house. 7. By the time the manager asks me I (to complete) this translation.

Ex. 5. Future Perfect or Future Indefinite?

1. I hope that you (not to forget) about me by the end of the week. 2. I hope you (not to forget) my telephone number. 3. We (to cook) dinner tonight. 4. We (to cook) dinner by the time you come. 5. Sam (to learn) this poem by heart. 6. Sam (to learn) this poem by heart by the end of the lesson. 7. I think I (to buy) this magazine. 8. I (to buy) this magazine before you come. 9. We (to spend) the money tomorrow. 10. We (to spend) the money by the end of the week.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 6. Read the following information about some famous moments in history. Choose the correct form of the verb.

A. Columbus left Spain in August 1492 with three ships, to try and find a way to India by sailing west instead of east. When his ships *finally reached* / *had finally reached* land on 12 October, he thought he was there, but the ships *actually arrived* / *had actually arrived* in America instead.

B. Captain Robert Scott wanted to reach the South Pole first. He and his companions finally arrived there on 1 January 1912 after a terrible journey across the ice, but *found* / *had found* a Norwegian flag. Unfortunately for Scott, Roald Amundsen *got* / *had got* there on 14 December, 18 days earlier.

C. Leonardo painted his famous “The Last Supper” between 1495 and 1498. But the painting started to deteriorate within 50 years. The most common explanation for this used to be that Leonardo *used* / *had used* the

wrong kind of paint, but experts have always disagreed about this, and many believe that the damp in the wall is the cause of the damage. Between 1978 and 1999, experts *restored / had restored* the painting, and the public can now see it again.

Ex. 7. Complete the sentence with the Past Simple or Past Perfect form of the verb in brackets.

1. When I (try) to use my laptop, I realized the battery (run) down.
2. I (turn) the computer off, but forgot that I (not save) my work.
3. I only remembered I (not pay) the bill when my Internet connection (stop) working.
4. When I (receive) the e-mail, I couldn't understand who (send) it.
5. When I (check) the instructions, I understood what I (do).
6. I knew I (receive) a virus when I (run) the anti-virus program.
7. As soon as I (download) the document, I knew I (make) a mistake.
8. I could see what (go) wrong as soon as I (look) inside the printer.
9. I knew I (press) the wrong key when nothing (happen).
10. When the screen (go) blank, I couldn't understand how it (happen).

Ex. 8. Complete the text with the Past Indefinite, Past Continuous or Past Perfect form of the verbs in brackets.

Mozart was born in 1756, the son of a professional musician. His father soon (give up) composing when he recognized his son's musical talent. By the age of three, the young Mozart (learn) to play several pieces of music. While he and his father (travel) round Europe, Mozart met many famous musicians and composers. Before he was 17, he (compose) several operas. While he (visit) the Vatican in Rome, he (listen) to a piece of music which, up to this point, the Vatican authorities (keep) secret. No one (publish) a copy of the piece before, but Mozart (manage) to write it down from memory after he (listen) to it once.

By the age of 30 he (become) one of the most famous composers in Europe, and (have) a large apartment in Vienna, which is now a tourist attraction. It was here that he (write) his famous opera “*The Marriage of Figaro*”. In 1791, while he (work) on his Requiem, he (fall) ill and died at the age of 35.

Ex. 9. Translate into English.

1. К завтрашнему дню я закончу этот отчет. 2. Мы сделаем эту работу к трем часам дня, а потом пойдем в парк. 3. К 20 июня мы сдадим все экзамены. 4. Строители построят эту школу к 1 сентября. 5. Я напишу это письмо к тому времени, как придет секретарь. 6. Поезд уже уйдет к тому времени, когда мы придем на станцию. 7. Я переведу эту статью к понедельнику.

Ex. 10. Choose the right form:

1. He (will sleep / will be sleeping) when you come back tonight.
2. By the time I come they (will go / will have gone).
3. - It is snowing heavily. Have you listened to the weather forecast for tomorrow ? - I hope it (will stop / will be stopping / will have stopped) snowing by tomorrow morning.
4. My sister (will know / will have known) the result of her exam on economy in three days.
5. - Let's meet at the station at 5 o'clock - Ok. I (will wait / will be waiting / will have waited) for you there.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 11. Use "had" or "shall/will have":

1. When we came to the station the train ... left.
2. Her friend ... waited for her till 5 o'clock and then left.
3. When I came in Sam ... left the room.
4. We... finished all preparations by the time the guests come.
5. He ... had a terrible day and looked very tired.
6. We hope they ... landed safely in Paris by that time.
7. She ... forgotten all about him by the time he returns.
8. The taxi... arrived before we were ready.
9. At last I learnt what... happened to him.
10. When... you finished your paper at last?
11. By the end of the last month they... not completed the experiment yet.
12. She... left the house before you return.

Ex. 12. Use “after,” “when,” “by,” “by the time,” “before,” “until”:

1. My parents had eaten the dinner ... I got home.
2. He had been a worker ... he became a businessman.
3. It will have grown completely dark ... 8 o'clock.
4. Bill had already left ... we got there.
5. ... the guests had left I went to bed.
6. Where did your sister work ... she had graduated from the Institute?
7. Her eyes were red ... she had cried.
8. I had never seen any of Turner's paintings ... I visited the art museum.
9. ... the end of next year her son will have finished school.
10. I went to the chemist's ... I had visited my sick friend.
11. Nick had studied French ... he entered the University.
12. She hadn't been able to swim ... he taught her.

Ex. 13. Put the verb in brackets into the Past Indefinite, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect.

1. He (close) the window and (sit) in his armchair, reading a newspaper.
2. When I (arrive) the lecture already (start).
3. The rain (stop) and the sun (shine) brightly.
4. Unfortunately when I arrived Ann just (leave), so we only had time for a few words.
5. I (watch) his eyes pretty closely while we (exchange) these remarks.
6. When we (reach) the field, the game already (start).
7. He suddenly (realize) that he (travel) in the wrong direction.
8. When I (look) for my passport, I (find) this old photograph.
9. You looked very busy when I saw you last night. What you (do)?
10. He (not / be) there five minutes, when the storm (begin).
11. He (not/allow) us to go out in the boat yesterday as a strong wind (blow).
12. I (call) Paul at 7.00 but it wasn't necessary because he already (get) up.

13. When I (hear) his knock I (go) to the door and (open) it, but I (not / recognize) him at first because I (not / wear) my glasses.

14. I (see) you yesterday from the bus. Why you (use) a stick? - I (use) it because I (hurt) my leg that morning.

15. We (return) home at nightfall and we (be) very glad to get home again, but we (have) a wonderful day.

Ex. 14. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Я уже потренируюсь, когда вы придете.
2. Мы будем тренироваться завтра с 5 до 7.
3. Где они будут тренироваться в следующем году?
4. Он придет к 6 часам.
5. Завтра в 5 часов у меня будет урок английского.
6. Мы сдадим все экзамены к концу месяца.
7. Я буду сдавать экзамены весь месяц.
8. Я прочту эту книгу до того, как ты вернешься.
9. Мы скоро прочитаем эту книгу.
10. Мы будем читать эту книгу завтра в это время.
11. К тому времени он уже уедет из Москвы.
12. Мы будем обедать через час.
13. Мы будем обедать, когда они придут.
14. Мы пообедаем к трем часам дня.
15. Я напишу сочинение завтра.
16. Я напишу сочинение к концу дня.
17. Я буду писать сочинение, когда отец вернется домой.
18. Я напишу тебе письмо.
19. К семи часам я закончу эту работу.
20. Мы все еще будем работать, когда вы вернетесь.

Ex. 15. Translate the sentences into English:

- 1) Мы скоро прочитаем эту книгу.
- 2) Что ты будешь делать завтра в 12 часов?
- 3) Мы пойдем в кино, если у нас будет время.

- 4) Вчера весь день я писал статью.
- 5) Маргарита разговаривает на четырех языках.
- 6) В комнате было жарко, и я открыла окно.
- 7) Я потерял свои ключи и не могу их найти.
- 8) Строители построят эту школу к 1 сентября.
- 9) Мои волосы сырые, я их только что вымыла.
- 10) Его брат уехал в Москву после того как сдал все экзамены.
- 11) Он написал доклад к 6 часам.
- 12) – В какую игру вы играете? – Мы играем в хоккей.
- 13) Когда вы получили последнее письмо? – Месяц назад.
- 14) Мы приняли их приглашение, прежде чем узнали новости.
- 15) Через два дня они будут в Париже.
- 16) Я уже закончил свою работу и могу идти домой.
- 17) Вы поблагодарили его за книги?
- 18) – Дети смотрят телевизор? – Нет, они в кровати.
- 19) Завтра в это время мы будем работать в библиотеке.
- 20) Я никогда не видел вашего тренера.

Ex. 16. Choose the right variant.

1. At last I ... the key that was lost yesterday.
a) found b) have found c) find d) had found

2. Charles Dickens ... many novels.
a) has written; b) wrote c) was writing d) had written
3. When the pirates opened the chest they found that someone ... the map.
a) have taken b) took c) had taken d) will take

4. A taxi hit him as he ... the street.
a) was crossing b) crossed c) will cross d) has crossed

5. By the time father returns from his round the world trip his son ...
a grown-up man.
a) will become b) will have become c) becomes d) will be becoming

6. While you ... away I'll finish this work.

a) are b) will be c) will have been d) were

7. She will be working

a) usually b) tomorrow c) at this time tomorrow d) soon

8. We haven't seen him

a) often b) long ago c) lately d) never

9. I ... a lot of new clothes recently.

a) am buying b) was buying c) had bought d) have bought

10. I ... a telephone call any minute, please.

a) expect b) am expecting c) had expect d) will have expected

Ex. 17. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1. Как образуется отрицательная форма Present Perfect?

2. С какими обстоятельствами времени часто употребляют Present Perfect? Как переводится «since»? Это предлог или союз?

3. Какое действие выражают глаголы в Present Perfect?

4. В каких случаях следует употреблять Past Indefinite, а в каких Present Perfect?

5. Назовите три формы следующих неправильных глаголов: leave, be, hear, come, read, bring, fall, feel, win, teach.

6. Как образуется утвердительная форма Past Perfect?

7. Как образуется утвердительная форма Future Perfect?

8. С какими обстоятельствами времени часто употребляют Past Perfect?

9. Какое действие выражает глагол в форме Future Perfect?

10. Переведите предложение на русский язык, определите временную форму сказуемого. Объясните употребление временных форм: She realized that she was going to faint. She had eaten nothing since the picnic.

UNIT 10. ГРУППА СОВЕРШЕННЫХ ДЛИТЕЛЬНЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS GROUP OF TENSES)

Времена группы Perfect Continuous:

настоящее совершенное длительное время — the Present Perfect Continuous,

прошедшее совершенное длительное время — the Past Perfect Continuous,

будущее совершенное длительное время — the Future Perfect Continuous,

будущее совершенное длительное в прошедшем — the Future Perfect Continuous in the Past.

Времена группы Perfect Continuous образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола have в соответствующей форме, 3-ей формы глагола to be (been) и Present Participle смыслового глагола (-ing) по формуле: **to have been + V ing (Participle I)**

☺ Present Perfect Continuous:

E.g. I have been waiting for you for three hours.

He has been waiting for you for three hours.

☺ Past Perfect Continuous:

E.g. I had been waiting for you for three hours.

☺ Future Perfect Continuous:

E.g. I will have been waiting for you for three hours.

☺ Глаголы, употребляемые в одном из времен группы Perfect Continuous, на русский язык переводятся, как правило, глаголами несовершенного вида.

☺ Формы Future Perfect Continuous не употребляются в устной речи.

НАСТОЯЩЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

☺ **Утвердительная форма** Present Perfect Continuous образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to have в Present Indefinite (has, have), 3-ей формы глагола to be (been) и Present Participle смыслового глагола (V-ing):

E.g. She **has been studying** English for 8 years.

We **have been writing** this test since 8 o'clock.

☺ **В вопросительной форме** вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. **Has she been studying** English for 8 years?

Have you been writing this test since 8 o'clock?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы not, которая ставится после вспомогательного глагола:

E.g. She **has not been studying** English for 8 years.

We **have not been writing** this test since 8 o'clock.

The Present Perfect Continuous употребляется:

1) для выражения действия, которое началось в прошлом, длилось определенный промежуток времени в прошлом и еще не закончилось в момент речи (с предлогами “since”, “for” и с союзом “since”). В этом случае глагол-сказуемое придаточного предложения времени, вводимого союзом since, употребляется в Past Indefinite:

E.g. It has been raining since morning.

What have you been doing since you came to Moscow?

2) для выражения действия, которое началось в прошлом, длилось определенный промежуток времени в прошлом, и закончилось до момента речи:

E.g. Well, dad, what have you been doing today?
Here you are at last! I have been looking for you.

ПРОШЕДШЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

☺ **Утвердительная форма** Past Perfect Continuous образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to have в Past Indefinite (had), 3-ей формы глагола to be (been) и Present Participle смыслового глагола (V-ing):

E.g. She **had been studying** English for 8 years when she went to London.

We **had been writing** this test for half an hour when you came.

☺ **В вопросительной форме** вспомогательный глагол ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. **Had she been studying** English for 8 years when she went to London?

Had you been writing this test for half an hour when I came?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы “not”, которая ставится после вспомогательного глагола:

E.g. She **had not been studying** English for 8 years when she went to London.

We **had not been writing** this test for half an hour when you came.

The Past Perfect Continuous употребляется:

1) для выражения действия, которое началось в прошлом, длилось определенный промежуток времени в прошлом и закончилось ранее другого действия в прошлом (выраженного, как правило, глаголом в Past Indefinite):

E.g. I had been writing this exercise for half an hour when my friend came.

2) для выражения действия, которое началось в прошлом, длилось определенный промежуток времени в прошлом и завершилось к (by) определенному моменту времени в прошлом:

E.g. By that time they had already been looking for a new house for six months.

БУДУЩЕЕ СОВЕРШЕННОЕ ПРОДОЛЖЕННОЕ ВРЕМЯ THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS TENSE

☺ **Утвердительная форма** Future Perfect Continuous образуется с помощью вспомогательного глагола to have в Future Indefinite (shall, will have), 3-ей формы глагола to be (been) и Present Participle смыслового глагола (V-ing):

E.g. She **will have been studying** English for 8 years when she goes to London.

We **shall have been writing** this test for an hour when you come.

☺ В **вопросительной форме** вспомогательный глагол **will** ставится перед подлежащим:

E.g. **Will she have been studying** English for 8 years when she goes to London?

Will you have been writing this test for an hour when I come?

☺ **Отрицательная форма** образуется при помощи отрицательной частицы “not”, которая ставится после вспомогательного глагола **will**:

E.g. She **will not have been studying** English for 8 years when she goes to London.

We **shall not have been writing** this test for an hour when you come.

The Future Perfect Continuous Tense употребляется для выражения действия, которое начнется до определенного момента в будущем и будет продолжаться вплоть до этого момента:

E.g. By the end of next month, she will have been teaching for twenty years.

• Ввиду сложности формы Future Perfect Continuous употребляется только в формальной письменной речи.

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. John's German is rather fluent. He ... (to study) the language for more than 10 years.

2. Sue and her younger brother ... (to make) a snowman all the morning.

3. I'm tired. I ... (to play) tennis all the afternoon.

4. The Smiths ... (to live) in Stratford for nearly three years now.

5. Why are you so late? We ... (to wait) here for ages.

6. It's time to do your homework. You ... (to watch) television since 10 o'clock!

7. Jeff ... (to work) in his uncle's business since he left school.

8. A friend of mine ... (to learn) English for nearly four years, but she still doesn't speak it very well.

9. It... (to rain) all day.

10. Tom ... (to repair) his car since early in the morning.

Ex. 2. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous.

1. What's the matter? You ... (to lose) something?

2. My younger brother ... (to grow) three centimetres this month.

3. Your English is rather good. You ... (to study) it long?

4. I'm not surprised he ... (to fail) his exam. He ... (not to work) hard recently.

5. Let's give that cat some food! It... (to sit) on the doorstep for hours. I'm sure it's starving.

6. I ... (to do) housework all the morning.

7. Why you ... (not to buy) your mother a present?

8. How many times Frank ... (to be) late for classes this week?

Ex. 3. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Indefinite, Present Continuous, Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous.

1. Мой папа работает в институте. Мой папа работает в институте с 1995 года.

2. Моя сестра спит. Она спит с 5 часов.

3. Он пишет стихи с детства. Мой дядя пишет стихи. Он написал уже 2 книги.

4. Мы ищем квартиру. Сколько квартир вы уже посмотрели? Как долго вы ищете квартиру?

5. Сэлли делает домашнее задание. Как долго она ее делает? Сколько она уже сделала? Она сделала только половину.

Ex. 4. Use one of the following tense forms: Present Indefinite, Present Continuous, Present Perfect, Present Perfect Continuous:

1. This man (to be) a writer. He (to write) books. He (to write) books since he was a young man. He already (to write) eight books.

2. What you (to do) here since morning?

3. Lena is a very good girl. She always (to help) her mother about the house. She (to help) her mother since morning. They already (to wash) the floor and (to dust) the furniture. Now they (to cook) dinner together.

4. He (to run) now. He (to run) for ten minutes without any rest.

5. Where he (to be) now? He (to play) volleyball with his friends. They (to play) since breakfast time.

6. I (to live) in St. Petersburg. I (to live) in St. Petersburg since 1990.

7. This is the factory where my father (to work). He (to work) here for fifteen years.

8. You (to find) your notebook? - No! I still (to look) for it. I already (to look) for it for two hours, but (not to find) it.

9. You (to play) with a ball for three hours already. Go home and do your homework.

10. Wake up! You (to sleep) for ten hours already.

11. I (to wait) for a letter from my cousin for a month already, but (not yet to receive) it.

12. She already (to do) her homework for two hours; but she (not yet to do) half of it.

13. I (to wait) for you since two o'clock.

14. What you (to do)? - I (to read). I (to read) for two hours already. I already (to read) sixty pages.

15. It is difficult for me to speak about this opera as I (not to hear) it.

Ex. 5. Translate into English using Present Indefinite, Present Continuous. Present Perfect or Present Perfect Continuous:

1) Мы знаем друг друга уже четыре года. 2) Я всегда хотел изучать английский язык. 3) Где Нина? - Она уже два часа дома. 4) Где дети? Они все еще играют во дворе. 5) Мой брат уже 3 года инженер. 6) Мой друг знает английский с детства. 7) Я уже полчаса наблюдаю за тобой. 8) Ваш брат еще болен? - Нет, он уже поправился. Он уже 3 дня занимается физикой. Он хочет получить отличную оценку на экзамене. 9) Мне уже давно хочется прочесть эту книгу. 10) Я уже двадцать минут пытаюсь найти мою старую тетрадь. 11) Они уже десять лет живут в Нью-Йорке. 12) Моя тетя - артистка. Она всегда любила театр. 13) Ваш папа уже вернулся с севера? - Да, он уже две недели дома. 14) Я уже три дня об этом думаю. 15) Моя сестра пьет кофе с молоком. А я всегда предпочитал черный кофе. 16. Мы очень рады вас видеть. Мы вас ждали целый месяц.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 6. Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Continuous Tense.

1) The room was empty but there was a smell of cigarettes. Somebody (smoke) in the room. 2) He turned to the girl who (listen) to the conversation with breathless interest. 3) It was very hot in the house and she (lie) awake

for hours. 4) It (snow) heavily and the telephone was cut down. 5) It (rain) for weeks and the only bridge across the river was destroyed. 6) It became very dark and the children (speak) in low voices for the last ten minutes. 7) He (study) the problem for a few years before he could solve it.

Ex. 7. Open the brackets using Past Perfect Continuous or Past Continuous:

1) Jim was on his hands and knees on the floor, he (look) for his pen. 2) When I arrived she (wait) me. But she looked angry as she (wait) for a very long time. 3) They still (walk) when it started snowing. 4) The children looked tired. They (walk) since early morning. 5) The magnificent car (wait) at the door. It (wait) for two hours. 6) The sun (shine) all day long yesterday. 7) She (cry) for a few minutes more before she could stop. 8) John (drive) the car when the accident happened.

Ex. 8. Translate the sentences into English using Past Continuous, Past Perfect Continuous or Past Simple:

1. Был вечер. Моя мама читала книгу, а я писал письмо. Вдруг вошел мамин брат. Мы разговаривали около часа, когда позвонила его жена и напомнила ему о театре. 2. Катя вышла из института, села в автобус и поехала домой. Когда она пришла домой, ее сын готовил уроки. Пока он занимался, она готовила ужин. 3. Что ты делала вчера в это время? - Я писала доклад в библиотеке. Я писала его уже час, когда в библиотеку пришли мои друзья. - Когда ты вернулась домой? - Поздно. 4. С кем ты вчера разговаривал, когда я встретил тебя на улице? - С другом. Он два дня назад приехал из Киева. Мы говорили уже минут 15, когда ты вчера нас увидел. 5. Что ты делал вчера в 10 часов утра? - Я был в больнице. Я осматривал больных. Я осматривал их уже час, когда приехал профессор Сергеев.

Ex. 9. Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.

1. Next year we (study) English for three years. 2. In summer my brother (travel) in Siberia for a year. 3. In two years my friend's father (work) at the factory for 30 years. 4. It (snow) for a week tomorrow. 5. Next

year she (give) music lessons for twenty years. 6. In a month he (play) football for seven years. 7. In ten minutes they (discuss) this question for three hours. 8. In September they (build) their country house for 2 years. 9. In two months she (work) at school for ten years. 10. In half an hour they (write) a test paper for two hours.

Ex. 10. Open the brackets using Future Perfect Continuous or Future Perfect:

1. They (complete) the new bridge by the end of the year. 2. By the end of the week we (wait) 17 weeks for our telephone to be repaired. 3. I hope you (finish) this report by the end of the day. 4. We (fly) nonstop for 15 hours before we get to Calcutta. 5. She (leave) for work before the children get home from school. 6. By this time next year he (write) his memories. 7. Do you know that your sister (work) for this company for 10 years by next month. 8. They (be married) for 20 years next year.

Ex. 11. Translate the sentences into English:

1. Я буду очень занят в начале июня. Я буду сдавать экзамены. 2. Я напишу тебе письмо. 3. К семи часам я закончу эту работу (и смогу отдохнуть). 4. К 1 декабря будет уже 15 лет, как я работаю здесь. 5. Наш завод выполнит план к 5 декабря. 6. Я все еще буду работать, когда ты вернешься. 7. Он будет занят завтра? 8. Через год он ко мне придет. 9. Не приходите ко мне в пять часов. У меня будет урок английского языка. 10. Что ты будешь делать завтра в это время? - Я буду просматривать новые газеты и журналы. 11. Поезд уже уйдет к тому времени, когда мы приедем на станцию. 12. Мы сделаем это упражнение к трем часам дня, а потом все вместе пойдем гулять. 13. На следующей неделе мы к вам приедем. 14. Когда ты поступишь в мединститут, ты будешь изучать язык (уже) более семи лет. 15. Он пообедает через несколько минут. 16. К 15 мая мы уже сдадим все зачеты. 17. Строители построят эту школу к 1 сентября. 18. Я напишу ему письмо к тому времени, как она придет ко мне. 19. Ровно в шесть часов я буду ждать тебя на троллейбусной остановке. 20. Не звоните мне от трех до пяти: я буду работать. 21. Завтра в это время мы будем подъезжать к Сочи.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 12. Open the brackets using the proper tense form:

1. My father (to read) newspapers to get information about political life.
2. When I (to get) home yesterday, my sister (to make) a pie already.
3. I promise I (to phone) you as soon as I (to arrive).
4. It (to rain) cats and dogs. Take your umbrella.
5. The police (to stop) me on my way home last night.
6. We (to talk) about him when he suddenly came in.
7. We (to paint) our room for a week.
8. Julia (to finish) all the housework by three o'clock and we'll go for a walk.
9. I (not/to see) Tom this week.
10. Imagine! Next year my Grandpa (to give) lectures at the University for 40 years already.

Ex. 13. Choose the right word or word combination from the right column:

1. We shall be working in the library	a) for 10 years
2. He finished that project	b) seldom
3. I'm preparing for my last exam	c) now
4. I have had a test	d) today
5. She has been studying English	e) last week
6. We had translated the article	f) by the end of the lesson
7. He drinks coffee	g) in 2 days
8. She will know the results	h) from 2 till 3 tomorrow
9. We haven't solved this problem	i) yet

Ex. 14. Translate into English:

1. Я не пойду сейчас на улицу, потому что идет дождь, а у меня нет зонта (an umbrella).
2. Сегодня мы прошли (to walk) 20 километров.
3. Я ищу вас уже час (to look for).
4. Он изучал немецкий язык 2 года прежде чем поехал в Германию.
5. Я закончу эту часть проекта к завтрашнему вечеру.

6. Он принимал душ (to take a shower), когда зазвонил телефон.
7. Когда я приехал, он уже припарковал (to park) машину.
8. Я поступил в университет в прошлом году.
9. Вы читаете газеты? – Да, но очень редко.
10. Родители приедут через несколько дней.
11. Приходите в 6 часов, я буду ждать вас (to wait for).

Ex. 15. Translate into English:

1. Как только я буду свободен, я сам вам позвоню.
2. Он никогда не останавливался в этом отеле, здесь очень дорогие номера.
3. Не шумите! Дети спят.
4. Завтра с 7 до 9 она будет в театре. Она будет смотреть новую пьесу.
5. Я думаю, я встречала этих людей раньше.
6. Я вспомнила, что видела их раньше.
7. Моя младшая сестра сейчас в своей комнате. Она сидит у окна и мечтает о новом платье, которое видела в магазине.
8. После того как я поработал в библиотеке, я поспешил домой – мои родственники ждали меня там.
9. Идем в парк! – Если ты подождешь меня несколько минут, мы пойдем туда.
10. Когда я пришел домой, я увидел, что брат что-то делает на кухне. Я хотел помочь ему помыть посуду, но он уже сделал это.
11. Начальник подписал документы и ушел наверх.
12. Мы закончили работу и вышли на улицу. Дул сильный ветер, было очень холодно.
13. Он рассказал нам вчера, где купил эту книгу.
14. Мы всегда думали, что он честный человек.
15. Когда учитель вошел в класс, студенты громко разговаривали.
16. Как только я увижу его, я ему все расскажу.
17. Они закончат свой проект к началу месяца.
18. Обычно он обедает в столовой, но сегодня мы пообедали вместе в кафе.

19. Ты думаешь, ей понравится мой подарок?

20. Они только что закончили дискуссию.

Ex. 16. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

1) Как образуются времена группы Perfect Continuous?

2) Назовите три основные формы глаголов to be, to have. Как образуется причастие I?

3) Глаголами какого вида, как правило, переводятся на русский язык глаголы, употребляемые в одном из времен группы Perfect Continuous?

4) Как образуется вопросительная форма Present Perfect Continuous?

5) Как образуется отрицательная форма Past Perfect Continuous?

6) Как образуется утвердительная форма Future Perfect Continuous?

7) Какие сигнальные слова, характерные для времен группы Continuous, вы знаете?

8) Какие глаголы не употребляются во временах группы Perfect Continuous?

9) Назовите основные различия в употреблении the Present Continuous Tense и the Present Perfect Continuous Tense?

10) Охарактеризуйте действие, которое выражает глагол в форме the Future Perfect Continuous Tense?

**UNIT 11. ПОВТОРЕНИЕ ВРЕМЕН
(TENSES REVISION)**

Ex. 1. Translate the sentences into Russian, identify the tense form:

1) Cuckoos don't build nests. They use the nests of other birds.

2) We went shopping and bought a lot of things yesterday.

3) They will be working in the library from 4 till 6 tomorrow.

4) The children are very quiet. Go and see what they are doing.

5) If I learn the rule I'll do this exercise correctly.

- 6) We have a lift but it doesn't work very often.
- 7) Where were you yesterday?
- 8) What are you doing? - I'm working at my report.
- 9) She graduated from the university last year.
- 10) The last train leaves the station at 11.30.
- 11) I have just told you the answer.
- 12) While father was reading a newspaper Ann was preparing her lessons.
- 13) Tom's birthday is tomorrow. A lot of guests will come to his party.
- 14) When I was walking in the park yesterday I saw a small dog that was lying under the tree and looking at me.
- 15) I have never missed a single film with this actor.
- 16) The Smiths invited us to dinner last Saturday.
- 17) She has been to London many times.
- 18) It's raining cats and dogs, take an umbrella with you.
- 19) The day after tomorrow I'll be in Paris.
- 20) I haven't seen him since my childhood.

Ex. 2. Translate the jokes, explain the use of tenses.

☺ A small boy asks his grandmother to buy him a raven. His granny asks, "What will you do with this bird when you get it?" The boy answers, "I'll see if it will live three hundred years!"

☺ A man meets a doctor in the street and says to him, "You know, doctor, my son often has a running nose. What will you advise him to take when this happens?" The doctor replies. "First I'll advise him to take a clean handkerchief and to see if it will help him".

☺ A young man came to his neighbour who did not wish to see him. The servant opened the door and said, "I'm sorry, sir, but Master has gone out" "Well," the man answered, "I'll wait for him, I'll just sit by the fire". "I'm afraid that's impossible, sir" the servant answered, "because the fire has gone out too"

☺ Mark Twain was once sitting in the opera house next to a young lady who talked to him all the time, so that he couldn't hear the music. After

the performance was over she invited him to the opera "Carmen" on the following Friday. Mark Twain answered politely, "With pleasure, madam; I have never heard you in Carmen yet".

☺ A boy is sitting in a train and is reading a book. Every minute he cries out in surprise, "Oh, I can I believe it! How interesting!" another passenger asks him, "What kind of book are you looking through?" the boy replies, "I'm looking through a dictionary of correct spelling."

Ex. 3. Open the brackets using proper tense form:

a)

1. Please give me a pencil, I (to lose) mine.
2. I (not to meet) Peter since Monday.
3. Nina just (to finish) work.
4. Where Sergei (to be)? — He (to go) home. He (to leave) the room a minute ago.
5. What you (to read) now? — I (to read) "Jane Eyre" by Charlotte Bronte.
6. They (to read) "Ivanhoe" by Walter Scott a month ago. What about you? You (to read) "Ivanhoe"?
7. My watch (to stop). There (to be) something wrong with it.
8. You (to see) Jack today? — Yes, I (to see) him at the institute.
9. You (to hear) the new symphony by M.? — Yes, I... . — When you (to hear) it? — I (to hear) it last Sunday.
10. You (to change) so much. Anything (to happen)?
11. What you (to do) here at such a late hour? You (to write) your composition? — No, I (to write) it already. I (to work) at my report. — And when you (to write) your composition? — I (to finish) it two days ago.
12. I say, Tom, let's have dinner. — No, thank you, I already (to have) dinner.
13. What the weather (to be) like? It still (to rain)? — No, it (to stop) raining.

b)

1. They (to go) to the Hermitage last week.
2. They (to be) to the Hermitage twice this week.

3. After school yesterday he (to come) home, (to have) dinner, (to read) an article from the latest magazine and (to begin) doing his homework.

4. When your friend (to return) from the south? — She (to return) yesterday. — You (to go) to the station to meet her? — No, I..., I (to be) too busy.

5. With whom you (to discuss) this question yesterday?

6. I (to see) this film this week. I like it very much.

7. When I (to enter) the kitchen, I (to see) that my mother (to stand) at the table and (to cut) some cabbage. She (to cook) dinner.

8. As soon as I (to hear) a cry, I (to run) out of the room and (to see) that a child (to lie) on the ground and (to cry). "What (to happen)? Why you (to cry)? You (to hurt) yourself?" I asked.

9. As soon as I (to see) him, I (to understand) that he (to work) hard. He (to write) something and (not to notice) anything.

10. When I (to come) home yesterday, the children (to run) and (to sing) merrily. "We (to learn) a new song!" they cried.

11. When the young man (to enter) the room, she (to look) at him in surprise. "What you (to want) to tell me?" she (to say). "Why you (to come)?"

12. It (to rain) hard when I (to leave) home yesterday, so I (to return), (to put) on my raincoat and (to start) again.

13. Your brother (to return) from the north? — Yes, he (to come) a few days ago.

14. You (to be) to the Crimea? When you (to be) there? — I (to be) there in 1993.

15. Where (to be) your brother? — He just (to come) home. He (to take) a shower in the bathroom now.

Ex. 4. Use the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

THE WEATHER FORECAST

(after Jerome K. Jerome)

The weather (to be) a thing that I can never understand. I (to remember) one summer day. We (to read) the weather forecast in the newspaper: "Heavy showers with thunderstorms." We (to decide) to stay at

home. We (to look) at the people who (to pass) our house and (to say), “They (to come) home quite wet.” At twelve o’clock it (to become) very hot. One of us (to say), “I’d like to know when those heavy showers and thunderstorms (to begin)?” “Ah! They (to come) in the afternoon, you’ll see,” we (to say) to each other. But there (to be) no rain on that day. The next morning we (to read), I “The weather (to be) warm and fine, no rain.” We (to go) to the country. We (to want) to have a good rest. But it (to begin) to rain hard, and it (to rain) the whole day. We (to come) home quite wet, with colds and rheumatism all over us.

Answer the questions on the text.

- 1) Do you often listen to weather forecasts?
- 2) Do you believe them?
- 3) Has the weather ever spoiled your plans?

Ex. 5. Use the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

A STORY TOO TERRIBLE TO TELL

Three men (to come) to New York for the first time. They (to take) a room in a hotel. In the evening they (to go) sightseeing and (not to come) back till nearly three in the morning. The room they (to take) was on the 43d floor. “I (to be) sorry, gentlemen,” the porter (to say), “but the elevator (not to work). There (to be) something wrong with it. You (to have) to walk up to your room.” This (to be) too bad. But the men (to agree) to tell stories on the way up in order to while away the time.

By the time the first one (to tell) his story they (to climb) up to the 14th floor. The next story (to keep) them amused till they (to reach) the 31st floor. At last it (to be) time for the third man to tell his story, but he (to refuse). He (to say) that his story (to be) so terrible that he simply couldn’t tell it. They (to continue) climbing and all the time the two (to ask) him to begin. At last they (to stop) and (to refuse) to go on unless he (to tell) them his terrible story. “The story I have to tell you (to be) a short one,” he (to say) at last, “we (to leave) the key to our room downstairs.”

Ex. 6. Use the correct form of the verbs given in brackets.

AT THE STATION

We see three men at the railway station. They (to speak) to a porter. “What time (to be) the next train for London?” one of them (to ask). “They (to go) every hour. The next train (to be) at ten o’clock,” the porter (to say). “That’s all right,” they (to say). “Let’s go to the refreshment room and wait for the train there.”

At two minutes past ten the three men (to run) out of the refreshment room and (to ask) the porter, “The train (to go)?” — “Yes, it has,” the porter (to say). “The next train (to be) at eleven o’clock.” “That (to be) all right,” the three men (to say). “Let’s go to the refreshment room and have a drink there.”

At two minutes past eleven the three men again (to run) out of the refreshment room but the eleven o’clock train already (to go). “The next train (to be) at twelve o’clock. It (to be) the last train for London,” the porter (to say). At twelve o’clock we again (to see) the three men running out of the refreshment room. Two of them (to get) into a carriage but the third man (not to get) into the train. He (to stand) at the platform and (to laugh). “Why you (to laugh)?” the porter (to ask). — “Because those men (to come) to see me off,” the man (to say).

Do you think the two men in the carriage felt like laughing?

Ex. 7. Put the verb in brackets into its correct form.

1. What you (do) here? - I (look) for my pen.
2. He (go) to the theatre every Sunday.
3. The students (write) a test now.
4. They (write) it for an hour already.
5. I (receive) just a letter from him
6. We (not meet) since we (leave) school.
7. The woman who (speak) to Paul is our teacher.
8. I (speak) to him before you return.
9. Everything (become) clear as soon as he (receive) your letter.
10. When I (come) into the room they (discuss) something.

11. They (discuss) the article for a long time when I came.
12. It (rain) hard when I (leave) the house.
13. Tomorrow at 10 o'clock we (write) a composition.
14. When we (come) home she still (make) dinner.
15. I (try) to explain it to you for an hour, but you (not listen) to me.
16. When he (come)? - He (come) 10 minutes ago.
17. They (get) a car? - Yes, they (have) a car for 2 years already.
18. My brother (teach) at school since 1995.
19. When you (be) there tomorrow? - I (be) there at 10 o'clock.
20. We (wait) for you at 10 o'clock tomorrow.
21. They (finish) their work by last Monday.

Ex. 8. Translate into English:

- 1) Я редко пишу письма.
- 2) Когда я пришла домой, мой брат писал письмо своему другу.
- 3) Мы напишем сочинение к концу недели.
- 4) Этот писатель пишет рассказы для детей.
- 5) Не звони мне завтра с 2 до 3. Я буду писать доклад по истории.
- 6) После того как отец написал письмо, я отправил его.
- 7) Вы уже написали свое имя на открытке?
- 8) Не входите в класс! Дети пишут контрольную работу.
- 9) Вчера он написал мне ответ.
- 10) Сколько времени ты уже пишешь сочинение?
- 11) Когда мы напишем тест, мы сдадим его.
- 12) Когда учитель пришел в класс, ученики писали экзаменационную работу уже целый час.

Ex. 9. Translate into English:

- 1) В понедельник на прошлой неделе шел дождь.
- 2) Почему вы идете так быстро? – Я иду быстро, потому что я замерз.
- 3) Боюсь, я проиграл эту партию в шахматы. Я играл очень плохо, обычно я играю лучше.

- 4) Я еще не брала своего маленького сына в театр, но уже водила его в кино в первый раз несколько дней назад.
- 5) Она вошла и выключила телевизор, хотя только что началась ее любимая программа.
- 6) К концу недели будет год как мы работаем над этим проектом.
- 7) Предложения уже написаны на доске. Вы можете записать их в тетрадь.
- 8) Я уверен, он будет очень успешным в будущем.
- 9) Как только мы купим загородный дом, мы переедем туда.
- 10) Я сегодня без машины, ее сейчас ремонтируют.

Ex. 10. Translate into English:

- 1) Завтра мы будем кататься на лыжах в лесу весь день.
- 2) Они были в этом музее в прошлом году.
- 3) Что ты делал вчера, когда я позвонил тебе?
- 4) Бабушка работала в саду уже час, когда мы вернулись домой.
- 5) Завтра будет неделя, как мы работаем в этом новом здании.
- 6) Возьми зонт, идет дождь.
- 7) Осенью часто идет дождь.
- 8) Дождь идет уже несколько дней.
- 9) Через два дня будет неделя, как идет дождь.
- 10) Где живет твой брат? – Он живет и учится в Москве.
- 11) Он живет в Москве с детства.
- 12) Ты когда-нибудь был в Москве? – Да, я был там много раз.
- 13) После того как он перевел все предложения, он начал читать текст.
- 14) Что ты делаешь? – Перевожу текст.
- 15) Я перевожу текст с 2 часов.
- 16) Он часто переводит тексты с английского на русский язык.
- 17) Если он переведет статью на английский язык, он примет участие в конференции.
- 18) Она переведет все предложения к концу урока.
- 19) Мы не пригласим его на день рождения.
- 20) Они не поблагодарили нас за книги.

Ex. 11. Choose the correct verb form.

1. Our company ... a big profit last year.
a) has made b) had made c) made d) was making

2. Listen to them! What ... they ... about?
a) have been speaking b) are speaking c) have spoken d) do speak

3. The train ... at 7 o'clock.
a) leaves b) will leave c) is leaving d) will be leaving

4. On Friday it ... for a week.
a) rains b) will rain c) will have been raining d) will be raining

5. Last year they went to Brazil. They ... to this country before.
a) were never b) have never been c) has never been d) had never been

6. He ... while he was eating.
a) read b) was reading c) had read d) has been reading

7. I ... to drive for 5 years before I could pass my driving test.
a) learnt b) was learning c) had learned d) had been learning

8. When we met him, he ... us.
a) didn't recognize b) wasn't recognizing c) hadn't recognized d) hadn't been recognizing

9. If nobody bothers me, I ... the translation by eight.
a) will do b) will have done c) will have been doing d) will be doing
10. The lights went off and the orchestra ... playing.
a) started b) was starting c) had started d) had been starting

11. I'm exhausted. I ... at my report all day.
a) have worked b) have been working c) am working d) had been working

12. I ... what he is talking about.
a) don't understand b) am not understanding c) haven't understood d) will not understand

13. As soon as he ..., he'll solve all the problems.
a) will arrive b) arrives c) will have arrived d) have arrived

14. Will you ... the car tonight?
a) use b) be using c) have used d) have been using

UNIT 12. ПРЕДЛОГИ (PREPOSITIONS)

1. Предлогами называются служебные слова, которые показывают отношение существительного (или местоимения) к другим словам в предложении.

2. Предлоги выражают разнообразные отношения – пространственные, временные, причинные и т.д.

E.g. He lives in Moscow.

She is sitting under the tree.

He came with his brother.

3. Некоторые английские предлоги выполняют исключительно грамматическую функцию, передавая в сочетании с существительным (или местоимением) те же отношения, которые в русском языке передаются косвенными падежами без предлогов. В этом случае они теряют свое лексическое значение и на русский язык отдельными словами не переводятся. К таким предлогам относятся:

☺ Предлог «of», который в сочетании с существительным соответствует русскому родительному падежу.

E.g. The roof of the house is painted green.

☺ Предлог «to» в сочетании с существительным соответствует дательному падежу, обозначая лицо, к которому обращено действие:

E.g. He explained the rule to the students.

☺ Предлог «by» в сочетании с существительным соответствует русскому творительному падежу, обозначая действующее лицо:

E.g. The letter was written by my granny.

☺ Предлог «with» также соответствует творительному падежу, обозначая предмет, при помощи которого производится действие:

E.g. We cut bread with a knife.

4. По своей форме предлоги делятся на следующие группы:

а) простые: in, to, at, etc.

б) составные: into, upon, throughout, etc.

в) групповые, т.е. словосочетания, играющие роль предлогов: according to, by means of, instead of, in front of, etc.

5. По своему значению предлоги делятся на следующие группы:

Значение предлогов	Предлоги	Примеры
1. Предлоги места	in (в) at (в, у, возле) on (на) above (над) under (под) in front of (перед) behind (за, позади) between (между) near (около, рядом с)	The book is in the bag. I study at the University. I am sitting at the table. The book is on the desk. The lamp is above the table. The cat is under the table. The garden is in front of the house. The sport ground is behind our school. The table is between two chairs. She is standing near the window.
2. Предлоги направления	to (к) from (из) into (в, внутрь) out of (из) through (через, сквозь)	Come to me. I come from Russia. Put the book into the bag. Take the book out of the bag. He came in through the door.

3. Предлоги времени	<p>in (в, через) - с названием года, месяца;</p> <p>at (в) - с обозначением астрономического времени</p> <p>on (в) - с названием дней недели и датой</p> <p>by (к)</p> <p>from ... till ... (с ... до)</p> <p>for (в течение)</p> <p>during (во время чего-либо)</p> <p>after (после)</p> <p>before (перед)</p>	<p>in April, in 2000, in an hour, in two days</p> <p>at 5 o'clock, at midnight</p> <p>on Monday, on the 10th of February</p> <p>by 8 o'clock tomorrow</p> <p>from 5 till 6 o'clock</p> <p>for an hour</p> <p>during the lesson</p> <p>after work</p> <p>before the lesson</p>
4. Предлоги, выражающие падежные отношения	<p>of (родительный)</p> <p>to (дательный)</p> <p>with (творительный, обозначает орудие, т.е. чем произведено действие)</p> <p>by (творительный, обозначает деятеля, т.е. кто совершил действие)</p>	<p>the leg of the table</p> <p>Explain it to me.</p> <p>He wrote his letter with a pencil.</p> <p>This letter was written by my brother.</p>

across – поперек, через

E.g The boy ran across the street.

to come across – наталкиваться, встретиться случайно

E.g. I came across an old friend when I was in Moscow.

against – против (для выражения противодействия)

E.g. We were against the proposal.

along – вдоль по

E.g. I saw a sheep which was running along the road.

among – между, среди (относится к трем или более лицам или предметам)

E.g. The mother divided the cake among the children.

below – под, ниже (противоположен по значению предлогу «above»)

E.g. He signed his name below mine.

beside – рядом с, около

E.g. He was sitting beside me.

down –

1) вниз, по (после глаголов движения)

E.g. He ran down the hill.

2) вниз, внизу

E.g. I looked down and saw him.

3) глаголы, употребляющиеся с наречием «down» соответствуют русским глаголам с приставкой с-:

to come down – спускаться

to jump down – спрыгивать

to throw down – сбрасывать

«**down**» иногда употребляется в сочетании с некоторыми другими глаголами:

to lie down – ложиться

to sit down – садиться

to write down – записывать

during – в течение, во время

E.g. During my stay in Sankt Petersburg I visited many museums.

except – кроме (за исключением)

E.g. Everybody is ready except me.

besides – кроме (сверх, вдобавок)

E.g. He knows two foreign languages besides German.

round , around – вокруг, кругом

E.g. He travelled round the world.

The Earth moves round the Sun.

through – через, сквозь

E.g. He was walking through the forest.

towards – к, по направлению к

E.g. He was walking towards the sea.

up –

1) вверх (после глаголов движения)

E.g. He walked up the stairs.

The steamer sailed up the river.

2) для обозначения приближения к ч-л

to come up – подходить

to run up – подбегать

«**up**» употребляется в сочетании с другими глаголами:

to fill up – заполнить

to get up – вставать

to give up – бросить (привычку)

to look up – смотреть (в словаре, справочнике)

to make up – составлять

to pick up – поднимать

to ring up – звонить по телефону

to stand up – вставать

to wake up – просыпаться, будить

without - без

E.g. I cannot do it without your help.

☺ Глаголы, требующие после себя предлоги:

to arrive at	to divide into	to be out
to knock at	to translate into	to find out
to laugh at	to take into account	to point out
to look at	to consist of	to run over
to work at	to remind of	to think over
to shout at	to speak (talk) of	to agree to
to be surprised at	to think of	to apologize to
to ask for	to be afraid of	to belong to
to hope for	to be fond of	to happen to
to be late for	to be full of	to object to
to leave for	to be proud of	to pay attention to
to look for	to be sure of	to prefer to
to prepare for	to be in need of	to reply to
to start for	to get rid of	to refer to
to wait for	to take care of	to speak (talk) to
to borrow from	of course	to subscribe to
to differ from	to get off	to telephone to
to make from	to put off	to agree with
to save from	to take off	to deal with
to suffer from	to set off	to tremble with
to translate from	to congratulate on	(shake, shiver) with
to arrive in	to depend on	to be angry with
to include in	to insist on	to be pale (red, tired) with
to succeed in	to rely on	to be popular with
to take part in	to spend on	to be satisfied with
to be rich in	to call on	
to be in love	to put on	
to be in need		
to be in trouble		

☺ Предложные выражения

at the age of	for ever	in the sun
at the beginning of	for example	in time
at the end	for years	in vain
at home	for this purpose	on business

at night	for the first time	on board (a ship)
at a speed (of)	from (the) beginning to (the) end	on the contrary
to be at war	from time to time	on credit
at first	from side to side	on foot
at last	from my point of view	on purpose
at once	in any case	on the right side
at a time	in order	on sale
at the head	in part	on the way
at a low price	in conclusion	on the one hand
at first sight	in the country	on the whole
at this time	in the direction of	later on
by heart	in demand	out of doors
by land	in general	out of order
by chance	in a loud voice	out of work
by means of	in the morning	up -to-date
by all means	in the open air	up to here
by mistake	in pencil (with)	to make up one's mind
step by step	in Russian	What's up?
by train (bus, car)	in sight	
by the way	in the street	
by the weight		

☺ Групповые предлоги:

according to – согласно ч-л
 apart from – помимо, не считая, кроме
 because of – из-за
 by means of – посредством
 in addition to – в дополнение к
 in favour of – в пользу к-л
 in spite of – несмотря на
 instead of – вместо
 in view of – ввиду
 owing to – из-за, благодаря
 thanks to – благодаря
 with (in) respect to – в отношении

GRAMMAR EXERCISES

A) CLASSWORK

Ex. 1. Choose the right variant:

1. Are you coming to classes ... Monday?
a) in b) on c) at
2. They are going ... school.
a) in b) at c) to
3. Your breakfast will be ready ... 5 minutes.
a) by b) to c) in
4. My mother was born ... the 30th of April.
a) on b) in c) at
5. I've known you ... a long time.
a) in b) for c) since
6. They are walking ... the park now.
a) in b) on c) at
7. The roof... the house is very old.
a) by b) of c) to
8. There are many flowers ... our school.
a) in front of b) in c) on
9. The teacher explained the rule ... the students.
a) of b) to c) by
10. Their lectures begin ... 9 o'clock.
a) in b) on c) at

Ex. 2. Fill in the blanks with prepositions:

1. ... Sunday we often swim ... the river.
2. Last week he went ... Moscow.
3. I see many books ... the table and ... the bookcase.
4. I don't like to sit ... the window.
5. Pushkin street is ... Lenin street and Sadovaya street.
6. He will come back ...three days.
7. London is the capital ... Great Britain.
8. America was discovered ... Columbus.
9. He took some books ... the table and put them ... the bag.
10. ... the 25th of December people celebrate Christmas.
11. He bought a book ... English poems and gave it ... his sister.
12. I began writing my composition ... 7 o'clock and finished only ... the evening.

Ex. 3. Fill in the blanks with prepositions:

- 1) Where is the book? – It is ... the table.
- 2) Where is the tea? – It is ... the cup.
- 3) Put the plates ... the table.
- 4) Bathing ... the lake, they often jumped ... the water.
- 5) I like to sit ... the sofa ... my room.
- 6) There are many people ... the park today.
- 7) There is a girl standing ... the bridge. Why is she crying? – She dropped her doll ... the water.
- 8) I saw many people ... the platform waiting ... the train.
- 9) We went ... the garden and sat ... the bench.
- 10) We didn't want to stay ... town on such a hot day, so we went ... the country.
- 11) I like to go ... bed late.
- 12) I get up ... seven o'clock.
- 13) My birthday is ... the ninth of July.
- 14) ... Wednesday I usually have a lot of homework.
- 15) They returned from the wood ... sunset.

B) HOMEWORK

Ex. 4. Complete the sentences with prepositions:

- 1) "How did you get there?" ... bus? – No, ... foot.
- 2) In Britain children normally start school ... age of five.
- 3) It is not easy to live ... money.
- 4) In tennis you hit the ball ... a racket.
- 5) "Hamlet" and "Othello" are plays ... William Shakespeare.
- 6) "Which is your house?" – "The one ... the red door".
- 7) A fast train can run ... a very high speed.
- 8) Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant ... some friends of mine.
- 9) I like stories ... happy ends.
- 10) Would you like something to drink ... your meal?

Ex. 5. Fill in the blanks with prepositions:

- 1) The host is sitting ... the head of the table.
- 2) Pour the milk ... this jug.

- 3) What are you going to do ... the holidays?
- 4) I haven't seen you ... ages.
- 5) ... the football season the English papers provide information to the fans.
- 6) She divided the sweets ... us.
- 7) Come and sit down ... him.
- 8) Don't take the wrong train ... mistake.
- 9) The dining-room table is covered ... a white cloth.
- 10) Whom are you listening ...?
- 11) My room is ... the end ... the corridor.
- 12) Did you go to the Crimea ... land or ... sea?
- 13) I spoke ... him ... my travels ... Africa.
- 14) This table is made ... oak.
- 15) There are two bridges ... the river.
- 16) Why are you looking ... me like that?
- 17) Everything now is ... order.
- 18) The statue was erected ... honour ... the great man.
- 19) Look ... this word in the dictionary.
- 20) It's not a thing to laugh

Ex. 6. Supply the correct prepositions:

The name ... Mr. Blake's elder sister is Rosy and her husband Richard Green live ... a small house. There is a garden ... it. ... the ground floor there is a sitting -room, a kitchen and study.

... the first floor there is a bedroom and bathroom. When you come ... the sitting - room you see that the room light and sunny. It is a large room but there is not much furniture ... it. There are two comfortable armchairs, a coffee table, a green sofa and a standard – lamp ... the floor. ... the coffee table there is a nice wall - lamp. ... the floor there is a nice carpet.

Richard' study isn't large. There are four bookshelves ... the wall ... a lot of books ... them. There is a fire - place ... his study. The fire - place makes the room comfortable. Rosy and Richard often invite friends ... their place to watch television or listen ... music.

Ex. 7. Translate into English:

a) на столе, за столом, в столе, под столом, над столом, между столами, в стол, из стола, со стола, позади стола, перед столом, ножка стола, название улицы, студенты нашего факультета, кусок мела, чашка кофе, писать пером, резать ножом, есть ложкой, о моей семье, о его работе.

b) с утра до вечера, во время моих каникул, в это время, в течение многих лет, в 9.30, с пяти до семи, через 10 минут, в 1945 г., зимой и летом, в мае, утром и вечером, с понедельника до субботы, в понедельник, в декабре, осенью, через год, в течение 2-х часов, днем, через пять дней, ночью, во время урока, после занятий, 1 и 2 мая, перед обедом, после завтрака.

с)

1. Поставьте цветы на стол.
2. Бумагу положите в ящик.
3. Не ходите сегодня на реку.
4. Возьмите газеты со стола и положите их на полку под книги.
5. Пожалуйста, не входите в кабинет. Врач сейчас занят.
6. Говорите по - английски на уроках английского языка.
7. Не стойте у двери. Входите.
8. Не сидите у окна.
9. Отойдите от доски.
10. Выньте ваши тетради из портфеля.
11. Возьми мои конспекты у Белова.
12. Картину повесьте между окнами.
13. Я вижу картину над его столом.
14. Мой сын приходит домой в 6 часов с работы.
15. Дети сейчас в саду.
16. Вы знаете название этого фильма?
17. Стол учителя находится перед классом; позади стола - классная доска.
18. Дайте чашку чая и кусок пирога.
19. Расскажите мне о своей семье.
20. Мы едим суп ложкой, а мясо и рыбу вилоккой.

C) SUPPLEMENTARY WORK

Ex. 8. Fill in the blanks with prepositions:

- 1) The girl is afraid ... dogs.
- 2) I don't agree ... you.
- 3) If you break the cup mother will be angry ... you.
- 4) The train arrived ... the station early ... the morning.
- 5) When he arrived ... New York, nobody met him.
- 6) The film begins ... 8 o'clock. I'll call you ... at 7.30.
- 7) Ann is always asking ... money.
- 8) He is always borrowing money ... his friends.
- 9) The little girl was blue ... cold.
- 10) Who takes care ... your children?
- 11) He is good ... all subjects, but he is bad ... English.
- 12) My congratulations ... your leaving school.
- 13) His future depends ... her answer.
- 14) The teacher divided the pupils ... three groups.
- 15) Can you explain the rule ... me?
- 16) When do you listen ... the latest news?
- 17) The child is ill ... flu.
- 18) I'm interested ... politics.
- 19) In the end the prince married ... Cinderella.
- 20) She is suffering ... headaches.
- 21) I heard it ... the radio.
- 22) Many people took part ... the meeting.
- 23) Everybody was surprised ... his absence.
- 24) What are you laughing ...?
- 25) Does this path run ... the forest?

Ex. 9. Read and translate the text. Fill in the blanks with prepositions:

TEXT 1

Visitors ... plenty ... money to spend and who come chiefly ... enjoyment are likely to pass most ... their time ... the West End. Those who come to learn ... London's history will find much to interest them ... the City.

Here most ... the streets are narrow, and traffic is often very slow. Many ... these narrow streets run down ... the Thames, and ... the end ... many ... them warehouses can be seen. The City is concerned ... finance, but it is also a market ... goods ... almost every kind, ... all parts ... the world. The Port ... London is ... the east ... the City. Here today, are miles and miles ... docks, and the great industrial areas that depend ... shipping. This is the East End ... London, unattractive ... appearance, but very important ... the country's commerce. Ships ... 6,000 tons can come as far as London Bridge, below which is the part ... the river called the Pool. They can pass ... Tower Bridge. It takes only five minutes to raise the two halves ... the roadway to allow a ship to pass.

TEXT 2

Two men were travelling ... a very wild part ... America. They saw no modern houses and no traces ... civilization ... many days. What they saw were only a few huts made ... wood or tents where Indians lived. One day they met an old Indian who was a hunter. He was very clever and knew everything ... the forest and the animals living ... it and many other things. He could also speak English quite well.

"Can you tell us what the weather will be ... the next few days?" one ... the two travellers asked him.

"Oh, yes," he answered. "Rain is coming, and wind. Then there will be snow ... a day or two, but then the sunshine will come again and the weather will be fine."

"These old Indians seem to know more ... Nature than we ... all our science," said the man ... his friend. Then he turned ... the old Indian. "Tell me," he asked, "how do you know all that?" The Indian answered: "I heard it ... the radio."

Ex. 10. Choose the correct answer:

- 1) He was born ... the second of November.
a) on b) at c) in
- 2) Are you good ... English?
a) in b) of c) at
- 3) He likes to listen ... pop-music.
a) to b) in c) with

- 4) The letter is written ... a pen.
a) with b) in c) at
- 5) George isn't interested ... sport.
a) at b) of c) in
- 6) Are you afraid ... dogs?
a) on b) of c) with
- 7) Ann is different ... her sister.
a) from b) out c) of
- 8) He never thinks ... other people.
a) of b) with c) on
- 9) He has lost the key. He is looking ... it.
a) for b) with c) at
- 10) Nelly is ... holidays.
a) on b) at c) to
- 11) The path is running ... the field.
a) on b) about c) across
- 12) Does this book belong ...you?
a) to b) on c) with
- 13) He always spends money ... books.
a) on b) for c) with
- 14) Can you help me ... this heavy box?
a) with b) for c) to
- 15) What has happened ... this car?
a) with b) to c) in
- 16) We like to travel ... car.
a) by b) on c) with
- 17) The house is hidden ... the trees.
a) among b) between c) along
- 18) My mother likes to sit ... the sun.
a) at b) in c) on
- 19) They usually have meat ... dinner.
a) at b) on c) for
- 20) Are you fond ... sport?
a) of b) at c) with

Ex. 11. Check yourself. Answer the following questions.

- 1) Что такое предлог?
- 2) Что выражают предлоги?
- 3) Какие предлоги выполняют исключительно грамматическую функцию?
- 4) На какие группы делятся предлоги по своей форме?
- 5) На какие группы делятся предлоги по своему значению?
- 6) Назовите, какие предлоги относятся к этим группам.
- 7) Назовите глаголы, которые употребляются с предлогами.
- 8) Назовите составные предлоги.
- 9) Назовите несколько предложных выражений.

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

Infinitive	Past Indefinite	Past Participle	Translation
be	was (were)	been	быть
become	became	become	сделаться, стать
begin	began	begun	начинать/ся/
bring	brought	brought	приносить
build	built	built	строить
buy	bought	bought	покупать
come	came	come	приходить
cost	cost	cost	стоять
cut	cut	cut	резать
do	did	done	делать
draw	drew	drawn	тащить, рисовать
drink	drank	drunk	пить
eat	ate	eaten	есть, кушать
fall	fell	fallen	падать
feel	felt	felt	чувствовать
fight	fought	fought	бороться, сражаться
find	found	found	находить
forget	forgot	forgotten	забывать
get	got	got	получать, становиться
give	gave	given	давать
go	went	gone	идти, ходить
grow	grew	grown	расти, становиться
have	had	had	иметь
hear	heard	heard	слышать
hold	held	held	держать
hurt	hurt	hurt	причинять боль, ушибать
keep	kept	kept	держать, хранить
know	knew	known	знать
learn	learnt, learned	learnt, learned	учить
leave	left	left	оставлять, покидать
make	made	made	делать
meet	met	met	встречать
pay	paid	paid	платить
put	put	put	класть
read	read	read	читать
say	said	said	сказать
see	saw	seen	видеть

sell	sold	sold	продавать
send	sent	sent	посылать
sing	sang	sung	петь
sit	sat	sat	сидеть
sleep	slept	slept	спать
speak	spoke	spoken	говорить
spend	spent	spent	тратить
stand	stood	stood	стоять
take	took	taken	брать
teach	taught	taught	обучать, учить
tell	told	told	сказать
think	thought	thought	думать
understand	understood	understood	понимать
wake	woke, waked	woken, waken	просыпаться
wear	wore	worn	носить (одежду)
win	won	won	выигрывать, побеждать
write	wrote	written	писать

ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ

Представленное учебное пособие – это не сборник грамматических правил и упражнений, не самоучитель и не грамматический справочник. Главной задачей авторов было создание такого пособия, которое в условиях дефицита учебной литературы, крайне малого количества часов для аудиторных занятий, а также низкого языкового и общеобразовательного уровня студентов поможет им освоить базовый курс английской грамматики. Знание грамматики лежит в основе развития умений и навыков всех видов речевой деятельности: говорения, чтения, письма и аудирования, так как позволяет правильно строить речевые конструкции, понимать прочитанное и услышанное, грамотно излагать свои мысли на иностранном языке.

Большое количество различных упражнений дает студентам возможность применять на практике полученные теоретические знания и умело использовать их в речевой деятельности. Надеемся, что работа с пособием вызовет у студентов большой интерес.

Желаем всем дальнейших успехов в изучении английского языка!

LIST OF SOURCES

1. Выборова, Г. Е., Махмурян К. С., Мельчина О. П. Базовый курс: Учебник для учащихся средней школы и студентов неязыковых вузов. – Москва: АСТ-Пресс книга, 2003. – 384 с. – ISBN 5-7805-0248-X.

2. Выборова, Г. Е., Махмурян К. С. Сборник упражнений по английской грамматике к базовому курсу «Easy English»: Учебное пособие для учащихся средней школы и студентов неязыковых вузов. – Москва: АСТ-Пресс книга, 2005. – 176 с. (Easy English). – ISBN 5-462-00330-7.

3. Голицынский, Ю. Б. Грамматика английского языка. Сборник упражнений. – СПб.: КАРО, 2013. – 192 с.– <http://www.studentlibrary.ru/book/ISBN9785992501759.html>

4. Романова, Л. И. Практическая грамматика английского языка – М.; Рольф, 2000 – 384с. – (Домашний репетитор) – ISBN 5-7836-0308-2.

5. Качалова, К. Н., Израилевич Е. Е. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями и ключами. ЮМВЕС ЛИСТ Москва, 2000 – ISBN 5-88682-003-5.

6. Аркадьевская, К. А., Саратовская Л. Б., Ларина Т. С., Береславский В. Я. Практическая грамматика английского языка с упражнениями (Морфология) учебное пособие для 1 курса неязыковых вузов. М., «Высшая школа», 1975. – 208 с.

7. Иванова, А. К., Сатинова В.Ф. Английский язык коррективный курс; (Пособие для самостоятельной работы студентов) – Мн.: высшая школа, 1991 – 176 с. ISBN 5-339-00422-8.

8. Бонк, Н. А., Котий Г.А., Лукьянова Н.А. и др. Учебник английского языка. В 2-х частях. Часть 1. М.: ДЕКОНТ+ГИС, 2011 – 369 с. – ISBN 978-5-8330-0291-9 (ч.1)

9. Бутова, З. И. Учебник английского языка для гуманитарных специальностей вузов. – 4-е издание М., Айрис-Пресс, 2004 – 576 с. (высшее образование) - ISBN 5-7836-0715-8.

10. Raymond Murphy Essential grammar in Use. A self-study reference and practice work for elementary students of English. With answers. Cambridge University Press, 1990. – ISBN 0521357705.

11. Музланова, Е. С. Кисунько Е. И. Английский язык: полный экспресс-репетитор «Чтение» «Грамматика и лексика» «Письмо» «Говорение». – М. : АСТ: Астрель»; Владимир: ВКТ, 2011. – 606 с. ISBN 978-226-01975-3.

12. Ионина, А. А., Саакян А. С. Английская грамматика 21 века: универсальный эффективный курс. – Москва: Эксмо, 2015. – 496 с. ISBN 978-5-699-71151-2.

13. Дроздова, Т. Ю., Берестова А. И. Маилова В. Г. English Grammar: Reference and Practice: Учебное пособие. – 10-е издание – СПб. : Антология, 2006. – 464 с. ISBN 5-94962-075-5.

14. Гуревич, В. В. Английская грамматика. Упражнения. Тексты. Учебное пособие – м., Ин.язык, 2004. – 480 с. – ISBN 5-94045-064-4.

15. Бондарева, В. В. Английская грамматика в забавных рассказах. СПб., КАРО, 2002. – 224 с. – ISBN5-89815-186-9.

16. Миловидов, В. А. Английский язык. Полный справочник для подготовки к ЕГЭ. М., Астрель, 2011, 384 с. - ISBN 978-5-17-056917-5; 978-5-271-23222-0; 978-985-16-6712-9.

17. Бонк, Н. А., Салтыкова Е. М. Классическая грамматика к учебникам английского языка: правила, упражнения, ключи. М., Эксмо, 2018. – 320 с. – ISBN: 978-5-699-97064-3.

18. Музланова, Е. С. ЕГЭ за 30 дней: Экспресс-репетитор. М., Астрель, 2012. – 319 с. – ISBN 978-5-271-42057-3.

19. Миловидов, В. А. Английский язык. Грамматика. Сборник упражнений и ключи к ним. Практическая грамматика английского языка для начинающих. Книга-тренажер. М., АСТ, 2015. – 512 с. – ISBN 978-5-087666-2.

20. Чекушова, Д. Е., Мухаева Н. М. Учебные задания по английскому языку для студентов заочного отделения неязыковых факультетов. – Владимир, ВГГУ, 2008. – 56 с.

21. Vince Michael. Macmillan English Grammar in Context. Intermediate with key, Macmillan Edition, 2007, 232 с. – ISBN 978-1-4050-7140-6.

22. Eastwood John. Oxford Practice Grammar. Intermediate with tests. Oxford University Press, 2011. 439 с. – ISBN 978-019-430911-0.

CONTENTS

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ.....	3
UNIT 1. АРТИКЛЬ (THE ARTICLE).....	4
UNIT 2. ИМЯ СУЩЕСТВИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NOUN)	24
UNIT 3. МЕСТОИМЕНИЕ (THE PRONOUN)	47
UNIT 4. ИМЯ ПРИЛАГАТЕЛЬНОЕ. НАРЕЧИЕ (ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS).....	62
UNIT 5. ИМЯ ЧИСЛИТЕЛЬНОЕ (THE NUMERAL).....	76
UNIT 6. ГЛАГОЛЫ TO BE, TO HAVE. ОБОРОТ THERE IS/ARE (VERBS TO BE, TO HAVE. THERE IS/ARE CONSTRUCTION)	85
UNIT 7. ГЛАГОЛ (THE VERB). ГРУППА НЕОПРЕДЕЛЕННЫХ (ПРОСТЫХ) ВРЕМЕН (THE INDEFINITE/SIMPLE GROUP OF TENSES)	104
UNIT 8. ГРУППА ДЛИТЕЛЬНЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE CONTINUOUS / PROGRESSIVE GROUP OF TENSES)	130
UNIT 9. ГРУППА СОВЕРШЕННЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE PERFECT GROUP OF TENSES).....	150
UNIT 10. ГРУППА СОВЕРШЕННЫХ ДЛИТЕЛЬНЫХ ВРЕМЕН (THE PERFECT CONTINUOUS GROUP OF TENSES)	172
UNIT 11. ПОВТОРЕНИЕ ВРЕМЕН (TENSES REVISION)	183
UNIT 12. ПРЕДЛОГИ (PREPOSITIONS).....	192
LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS.....	207
ЗАКЛЮЧЕНИЕ.....	208
LIST OF SOURCES.....	209

Учебное издание

ИЗУЧАЕМ АНГЛИЙСКУЮ ГРАММАТИКУ
WE LEARN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Авторы-составители

БЛИНОВА Галина Александровна
ФЕДОРОВА Ирина Анатольевна

Учебное пособие по английскому языку
для студентов-бакалавров первого курса неязыковых специальностей

Издается в авторской редакции

Подписано в печать 19.04.19.
Формат 60×84/16. Усл. печ. л. 12,32. Тираж 122 экз.
Заказ

Издательство

Владимирского государственного университета
имени Александра Григорьевича и Николая Григорьевича Столетовых.
600000, Владимир, ул. Горького, 87.